



# Broadcasting Act 1990

## 1990 CHAPTER 42

An Act to make new provision with respect to the provision and regulation of independent television and sound programme services and of other services provided on television or radio frequencies; to make provision with respect to the provision and regulation of local delivery services; to amend in other respects the law relating to broadcasting and the provision of television and sound programme services and to make provision with respect to the supply and use of information about programmes; to make provision with respect to the transfer of the property, rights and liabilities of the Independent Broadcasting Authority and the Cable Authority and the dissolution of those bodies; to make new provision relating to the Broadcasting Complaints Commission; to provide for the establishment and functions of a Broadcasting Standards Council; to amend the Wireless Telegraphy Acts 1949 to 1967 and the Marine, &c., Broadcasting (Offences) Act 1967; to revoke a class licence granted under the Telecommunications Act 1984 to run broadcast relay systems; and for connected purposes. [1st November 1990]

BE IT ENACTED by the Queen's most Excellent Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:—

### Extent Information

**E1** For extent see [s. 204\(3\)-\(5\)](#)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C1** Act: specified provisions extended (Guernsey) (with modifications) (13.2.1991) and further specified provisions extended (Guernsey) (1.4.1991) by [S.I. 1991/191, art. 3, Sch.](#)

Act: specified provisions extended (Jersey) (with modifications) (13.2.1991) and further specified provisions extended (Jersey) (1.4.1991) by [S.I. 1991/193, art. 3, Sch.](#)

Act: specified provisions extended (Guernsey) (with modifications) (1.8.1991) by [S.I. 1991/1709, art. 3, Sch.](#)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- Act: specified provisions extended (Jersey) (with modifications) (1.8.1991) by S.I. 1991/1710, art. 3, **Sch.**
- C2** Act: definition of "relevant programme" applied (E.W.) (1.10.1992) by Criminal Justice Act 1991 (c. 53, SIF 39:1), s. 53(5), **Sch. 6 para 6(13)**; S.I. 1992/333, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2**
- C3** By Criminal Justice Act 1991 (c. 53, SIF 39:1), s. 101(1), **Sch. 12 para. 23**; S.I. 1991/2208, art. 2(1), **Sch. 1** it is provided (14.10.1991) that in relation to any time before the commencement of s. 70 of that 1991 Act (which came into force on 1.10.1992 by S.I. 1992/333, art. 2(2), **Sch. 2**) references in any enactment amended by that 1991 Act, to youth courts shall be construed as references to juvenile courts.
- C4** Act amended (1.4.1997) by 1996 c. 55, s. 124(3); S.I.1997/1005, **art. 4**
- C5** Act to be construed with specified provisions of 1996 c. 55 (1.10.1996 for certain purposes and otherwise 1.4.1997) by virtue of s. 147(2) of that 1996 Act; S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, **Sch. 1**; S.I. 1997/1005, **art. 4**
- C6** Act: power to modify conferred (18.9.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), **ss. 407**, 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/1900, art. 2(2), Sch. 2

## <sup>F1</sup>PART I

### INDEPENDENT TELEVISION SERVICES

#### Textual Amendments

- F1** Pt I (ss.1-71) applied (1.10.1996) by 1988 c. 48, s.72, as replaced 1996 c. 55, s. 138, **Sch. 9 para. 1**; S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, **Sch. 1**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C7** Pt. I: transfer of functions (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 1 para. 3(a)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

## CHAPTER 1

### REGULATION BY COMMISSION OF TELEVISION SERVICES GENERALLY

#### *Establishment of Independent Television Commission*

#### <sup>F2</sup>1 The Independent Television Commission.

.....

#### Textual Amendments

- F2** S. 1 repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### *Function of Commission*

## **F<sup>3</sup>2 Regulation by Commission of provision of television services.**

.....

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F3** S. 2 repealed (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21)**, s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

### *General provisions about licences*

## **3 Licences under Part I.**

(1) Any licence granted by [<sup>F4</sup>OFCOM] under this Part shall be in writing and (subject to the provisions of this Part) shall continue in force for such period as is provided, in relation to a licence of the kind in question, by the relevant provision of [<sup>F5</sup> Chapter 2 or 5 of this Part or section 235 of the Communications Act 2003].

(2) A licence may be so granted for the provision of such a service as is specified in the licence or for the provision of a service of such a description as is so specified.

(3) [<sup>F4</sup>OFCOM] —

- (a) shall not grant a licence to any person unless they are satisfied that he is a fit and proper person to hold it; and
- (b) shall do all that they can to secure that, if they cease to be so satisfied in the case of any person holding a licence, that person does not remain the holder of the licence;

and nothing in this Part shall be construed as affecting the operation of this subsection or of section 5(1) or (2)(b) or (c).

[<sup>F6</sup>(3A) Where [<sup>F4</sup>OFCOM] are not satisfied that a BBC company which has applied for a licence is a fit and proper person to hold it, they shall, before refusing the application, notify the Secretary of State that they are not so satisfied.]

(4) [<sup>F4</sup>OFCOM] may vary a licence by a notice served on the licence holder if—

- (a) in the case of a variation of the period for which the licence is to continue in force, the licence holder consents; or
- (b) in the case of any other variation, the licence holder has been given a reasonable opportunity of making representations to [<sup>F4</sup>OFCOM] about the variation.

(5) Paragraph (a) of subsection (4) does not affect the operation of section 41(1)(b); and that subsection shall not authorise the variation of any conditions included in a licence in pursuance of section 19(1) or 52(1) or in pursuance of any other provision of this Part which applies section 19(1).

(6) A licence granted to any person under this Part shall not be transferable to any other person without the previous consent in writing of [<sup>F4</sup>OFCOM] .

(7) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (6), [<sup>F4</sup>OFCOM] shall not give their consent for the purposes of that subsection unless they are satisfied that any such other

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

person would be in a position to comply with all of the conditions included in the licence which would have effect during the period for which it is to be in force.

- [<sup>F7</sup>(8) The holding by a person of a licence under this Part shall not relieve him of—
- (a) any liability in respect of a failure to hold a licence under section 1 of the Wireless Telegraphy Act 1949; or
  - (b) any obligation to comply with requirements imposed by or under Chapter 1 of Part 2 of the Communications Act 2003 (electronic communications networks and electronic communications services).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F4** Words in s. 3 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 1\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))
- F5** Words in s. 3(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 1\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))
- F6** S. 3(3A) inserted (24.7.1996) by [1996 c. 55, ss. 136, 149\(1\)\(f\), Sch. 8 para. 1](#)
- F7** S. 3(8) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 1\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

#### 4 General licence conditions.

- (1) A licence may include—
- (a) such conditions as appear to [<sup>F8</sup>OFCOM] to be appropriate having regard to any duties which are or may be imposed on them, or on the licence holder, by or under this Act [<sup>F9</sup>, the Broadcasting Act 1996 or the Communications Act 2003];
  - (b) conditions requiring the payment by the licence holder to [<sup>F8</sup>OFCOM] (whether on the grant of the licence or at such times thereafter as may be determined by or under the licence, or both) of a fee or fees of an amount or amounts so determined;
  - (c) conditions requiring the licence holder to provide [<sup>F8</sup>OFCOM], in such manner and at such times as they may reasonably require, with such information as they may require for the purpose of exercising the functions assigned to them by or under this Act [<sup>F10</sup>, the Broadcasting Act 1996 or the Communications Act 2003];
  - (d) conditions providing for such incidental and supplemental matters as appear to [<sup>F8</sup>OFCOM] to be appropriate.
- (2) A licence may in particular include conditions requiring the licence holder—
- (a) to comply with any direction given by [<sup>F8</sup>OFCOM] as to such matters as are specified in the licence or are of a description so specified; or
  - (b) (except to the extent that [<sup>F8</sup>OFCOM] consent to his doing or not doing them) not to do or to do such things as are specified in the licence or are of a description so specified.
- (3) The fees required to be paid to [<sup>F8</sup>OFCOM] by virtue of subsection (1)(b) shall be in accordance with such tariff as may from time to time be fixed by [<sup>F8</sup>OFCOM]; <sup>F11</sup>....
- (4) A tariff fixed under subsection (3) may specify different fees in relation to different cases or circumstances; and [<sup>F8</sup>OFCOM] shall publish every such tariff in such manner as they consider appropriate.



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) Where the holder of any licence—
- (a) is required by virtue of any condition [<sup>F12</sup>contained in the licence] to provide [<sup>F8</sup>OFCOM] with any information, and
  - (b) in purported compliance with that condition provides them with information which is false in a material particular,
- he shall be taken for the purposes of sections 41 and 42 [<sup>F13</sup>or (as the case may be) sections 237 and 238 of the Communications Act 2003 (enforcement of television licensable content service licences)] to have failed to comply with that condition.
- (6) Nothing in this Act which authorises or requires the inclusion in a licence of conditions relating to any particular matter or having effect for any particular purpose shall be taken as derogating from the generality of subsection (1).

#### Textual Amendments

- F8** Words in s. 4 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 2\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F9** Words in s. 4(1)(a) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 2\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F10** Words in s. 4(1)(c) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 2\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F11** Words in s. 4(3) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 2\(4\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F12** Words in s. 4(5) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 2\(5\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F13** Words in s. 4(5) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 2\(5\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

## 5 Restrictions on the holding of licences.

- (1) [<sup>F14</sup>OFCOM] shall do all that they can to secure—
- (a) that a person does not become or remain the holder of a licence if he is a person who is a disqualified person in relation to that licence by virtue of Part II of Schedule 2 to this Act; and
  - [<sup>F15</sup>(b) that a person does not become the holder of a licence if requirements imposed by or under Schedule 14 to the Communications Act 2003 would be contravened were he to do so; and
  - (c) that those requirements are not contravened in the case of a person who already holds a licence.]
- (2) [<sup>F14</sup>OFCOM] may accordingly—
- (a) require any applicant for a licence to provide them with such information as they may reasonably require for the purpose of determining—
    - (i) whether he is such a disqualified person as is mentioned in subsection (1)(a),
    - (ii) whether any such requirements as are mentioned in subsection (1)(b) would preclude them from granting a licence to him, and
    - (iii) if so, what steps would be required to be taken by or in relation to him in order for any such requirements to be complied with;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) revoke the award of a licence to a body where a relevant change takes place after the award, but before the grant, of the licence;
- (c) make the grant of a licence to any person conditional on the taking of any specified steps that appear to them to be required to be taken as mentioned in paragraph (a)(iii);
- (d) impose conditions in any licence enabling them to require the licence holder, if a body corporate, to give to them advance notice of proposals affecting—
  - (i) shareholdings in the body, or
  - (ii) the directors of the body,
 where such proposals are known to the body;
- [<sup>F16</sup>(da) impose conditions in a licence requiring the licence holder, if a body corporate, to give OFCOM notice, after they have occurred and irrespective of whether proposals for them have fallen to be notified, of changes, transactions or events affecting—
  - (i) shareholdings in the body; or
  - (ii) the directors of the body;
- (db) impose conditions in a licence enabling OFCOM to require the licence holder to provide them with such information as they may reasonably require for determining—
  - (i) whether the licence holder is a disqualified person in relation to that licence by virtue of Part 2 of Schedule 2; or
  - (ii) whether any such requirements as are mentioned in subsection (1)(b) have been and are being complied with by or in relation to the licence holder;]
  - (e) impose conditions in any licence enabling them to give the licence holder directions requiring him to take, or arrange for the taking of, any specified steps appearing to them to be required to be taken in order for any such requirements as are mentioned in subsection (1)(b) to be complied with.

[<sup>F17</sup>(2A) Before revoking in pursuance of subsection (2)(b) the award of a licence to a BBC company, [<sup>F14</sup>OFCOM] shall give the Secretary of State notice of their intention to do so, specifying the relevant change.]

  - (3) Where [<sup>F14</sup>OFCOM] —
    - (a) revoke the award of any licence in pursuance of subsection (2)(b), or
    - (b) determine that any condition imposed by them in relation to any licence in pursuance of subsection (2)(c) has not been satisfied,
 any provisions of this Part relating to the awarding of licences of the kind in question shall (subject to subsection (4)) have effect as if the person to whom the licence was awarded or granted had not made an application for it.
  - (4) Those provisions shall not so have effect if [<sup>F14</sup>OFCOM] decide that it would be desirable to publish a fresh notice under this Part in respect of the grant of a licence, or (as the case may be) a further licence, to provide the service in question.
  - (5) Every licence shall include such conditions as [<sup>F14</sup>OFCOM] consider necessary or expedient to ensure that where—
    - (a) the holder of the licence is a body, and
    - (b) a relevant change takes place after the grant of the licence,
 [<sup>F14</sup>OFCOM] may revoke the licence by notice served on the holder of the licence and taking effect forthwith or on a date specified in the notice.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- [<sup>F18</sup>(6) [<sup>F14</sup>OFCOM] shall not serve any such notice on the licence holder unless—
- (a) [<sup>F14</sup>OFCOM] have notified him of the matters [<sup>F19</sup>constituting their grounds for revoking the licence] and given him a reasonable opportunity of making representations to them about those matters, and
  - (b) in a case where the relevant change is one falling within subsection (6A)—
    - (i) they have also given him an opportunity of complying with [<sup>F20</sup>the requirements imposed by or under Schedule 14 to the Communications Act 2003,] within a period specified in the notification, and
    - (ii) the period specified in the notification has elapsed.
- (6A) A relevant change falls within this subsection if it consists only in one or more of the following—
- <sup>F21</sup>(a) .....
  - (b) a change in the national market share (within the meaning of [<sup>F22</sup>Part 1 of Schedule 14 to the Communications Act 2003] ) of one or more national newspapers (within the meaning of that Part of that Schedule);
  - (c) a change in the local market share (within the meaning of that Part of that Schedule) in a particular area of one or more local newspapers (within the meaning of that Part of that Schedule).]
- <sup>F23</sup>(6B) .....
- [<sup>F24</sup>(6C) [<sup>F14</sup>OFCOM] shall not serve any such notice as is mentioned in subsection (5) on a BBC company unless they have given the Secretary of State notice of their intention to do so, specifying the relevant change..
- <sup>F24</sup>(6D) Where [<sup>F14</sup>OFCOM] receive any written representations from a BBC company under subsection (6), they shall send a copy of the representations to the Secretary of State.]
- (7) In this section “relevant change”, in relation to a body to which a licence has been awarded or granted, means—
- (a) any change affecting the nature or characteristics of the body, or
  - (b) any change in the persons having control over or interests in the body, [<sup>F25</sup>or
  - (c) any other change giving rise to [<sup>F26</sup>a disqualification under Part 2 of Schedule 2 to this Act or a contravention of a requirement imposed by or under Schedule 14 to the Communications Act 2003]]
- being [<sup>F27</sup>(in any case)] a change which is such that, if it fell to [<sup>F14</sup>OFCOM] to determine whether to award the licence to the body in the new circumstances of the case, they would be induced by the change to refrain from so awarding it.

#### Textual Amendments

- F14** Words in s. 5 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 3\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F15** S. 5(1)(b)(c) substituted for s. 5(1)(b) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 350\(2\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F16** S. 5(2)(da)(db) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 3\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F17** S. 5(2A) inserted (24.7.1996) by [1996 c. 55, ss. 136, 149\(1\), Sch. 8 para. 2\(2\)](#)
- F18** S. 5(6)(6A)(6B) substituted for s. 5(6) (1.11.1996) by [1996 c. 55, s. 73, Sch. 2 Pt. V para. 12\(2\)](#); [S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, Sch. 2](#)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F19** Words in s. 5(6)(a) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 3\(4\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F20** Words in s. 5(6)(b)(i) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 3\(4\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F21** S. 5(6A)(a) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 3\(5\)\(a\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F22** Words in s. 5(6A)(b) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 3\(5\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F23** S. 5(6B) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 3\(6\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F24** S. 5(6C)(6D) inserted (24.7.1996) by 1996 c. 55, ss. 136, 149(1), [Sch. 8 para. 2\(3\)](#)
- F25** S. 5(7)(c) and the word “or” immediately preceding it inserted (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 73, [Sch. 2 Pt. V para. 12\(3\)\(a\)](#); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, [Sch. 2](#)
- F26** Words in s. 5(7) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 3\(7\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F27** Words in s. 5(7) substituted (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 73, [Sch. 2 Pt. V para. 12\(3\)\(b\)](#); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, [Sch. 2](#)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C8** S. 5 modified (temp.) (17.7.2003) by [The Communications Act 2003 \(Commencement No. 1\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1900\), art. 5](#)
- C9** S. 5(1) modified (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 143(1)(2); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, [Sch. 2](#)
- C10** S. 5(1)(a) amended (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 145(7); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, [Sch. 2](#)

### *General provisions about licensed services*

#### **F28<sup>6</sup> General requirements as to licensed services.**

.....

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F28** Ss. 6-12 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 4, Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### **F28<sup>7</sup> General code for programmes.**

.....

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F28** Ss. 6-12 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 4, Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### **F28<sup>8</sup> General provisions as to advertisements.**

.....

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F28** Ss. 6-12 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 4, [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**F28<sup>9</sup> Control of advertisements.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F28** Ss. 6-12 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 4, [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**F28<sup>10</sup> Government control over licensed services.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F28** Ss. 6-12 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 4, [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**F28<sup>11</sup> Monitoring by Commission of programmes included in licensed services.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F28** Ss. 6-12 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 4, [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**F28<sup>12</sup> Audience research.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F28** Ss. 6-12 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 4, [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### *Prohibition on providing unlicensed television services*

#### **13 Prohibition on providing television services without a licence.**

(1) Subject to subsection (2), any person who provides any [<sup>F29</sup>relevant regulated television service] without being authorised to do so by or under a licence under this Part [<sup>F30</sup>or Part I of the Broadcasting Act 1996] shall be guilty of an offence.

[<sup>F31</sup>(1A) In subsection (1) “relevant regulated television service” means a service falling, in pursuance of section 211(1) of the Communications Act 2003, to be regulated by OFCOM, other than a television multiplex service.]

(2) The Secretary of State may, after consultation with [<sup>F32</sup>OFCOM] , by order provide that subsection (1) shall not apply to such services or descriptions of services as are specified in the order.

(3) A person guilty of an offence under this section shall be liable—  
 (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum;  
 (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine.

(4) No proceedings in respect of an offence under this section shall be instituted—  
 (a) in England and Wales, except by or with the consent of the Director of Public Prosecutions;  
 (b) in Northern Ireland, except by or with the consent of the Director of Public Prosecutions for Northern Ireland.

(5) Without prejudice to subsection (3), compliance with this section shall be enforceable by civil proceedings by the Crown for an injunction or interdict or for any other appropriate relief.

(6) Any order under this section shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F29** Words in s. 13(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 5\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F30** words in s. 13(1) inserted (1.10.1996) by [1996 c. 55, s. 148\(1\), Sch. 10 Pt. I para. 2\(1\)\(b\)](#); [S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, Sch. 1](#)

**F31** S. 13(1A) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 5\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F32** Words in s. 13(2) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 5\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C11** S. 13 excluded (temp. until 11.10.1997) by [S.I. 1997/1682, regs. 1, 4\(3\)](#)

**C12** S. 13(1) excluded by [S.I. 1990/2537, art. 2\(1\)](#)

S. 13(1) excluded (5.1.1995) by [S.I. 1995/3172, art. 2](#)

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## CHAPTER II

### TELEVISION BROADCASTING ON CHANNELS 3, 4 AND 5

#### Channel 3

#### 14 Establishment of Channel 3.

- (1) [F33OFCOM] shall do all that they can to secure the provision, in accordance with this Chapter, of a nationwide system of television broadcasting services to be known as Channel 3.
- (2) Subject to subsection (5), Channel 3 shall be structured on a regional basis, with each of the services comprised within it (“Channel 3 services”) being provided for such area in the United Kingdom as [F33OFCOM] may determine in the case of that service.
- (3) If it appears to [F33OFCOM] that it would be appropriate for a particular Channel 3 service to do so, they may determine that the service shall include the provision of different programmes—
  - (a) for such different parts of the area for which it is provided, or
  - (b) for such different communities living within that area,as they may determine.
- (4) If [F33OFCOM] so determine in the case of a particular Channel 3 service, that service shall be provided for a particular area only between such times of the day or on such days of the week (or both) as [F33OFCOM] may determine.
- (5) If [F33OFCOM] so determine, a Channel 3 service may be provided for two or more areas for which regional Channel 3 services are provided, but any such service may only be so provided between particular times of the day.
- (6) In this Part—

“regional Channel 3 service” means a Channel 3 service provided for a particular area determined under subsection (2); and

“national Channel 3 service” means a Channel 3 service provided as mentioned in subsection (5).
- (7) Any reference in this section to an area in the United Kingdom does not include an area which comprises or includes the whole of England or the whole of Scotland.
- (8) In this section and section 15 “programme” does not include an advertisement.

#### Textual Amendments

**F33** Words in s. 14 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 6](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

#### 15 Applications for Channel 3 licences.

- (1) Where [F34OFCOM] propose to grant a licence to provide a Channel 3 service they shall publish, in such manner as they consider appropriate, a notice—
  - (a) stating that they propose to grant such a licence;



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) specifying—
    - (i) if the service is to be a regional Channel 3 service, the area in the United Kingdom for which the service is to be provided,
    - (ii) if the service is to include the provision of such programmes as are mentioned in section 14(3), the different parts of that area, or (as the case may be) the different communities living within it, for which such programmes are to be provided,
    - (iii) if the service is to be provided as mentioned in section 14(4), the times of the day or the days of the week (or both) between or on which it is to be provided, and
    - (iv) if the service is to be a national Channel 3 service, the areas in the United Kingdom for which it is to be provided and the times of the day between which it is to be provided;
  - (c) inviting applications for the licence and specifying the closing date for such applications; and
  - (d) specifying—
    - (i) the fee payable on any application made in pursuance of the notice, and
    - (ii) the percentage of qualifying revenue for each accounting period that would be payable by an applicant in pursuance of section 19(1)(c) if he were granted the licence.
- (2) [F34OFCOM] shall, when publishing a notice under subsection (1), publish with the notice general guidance to applicants for the licence in question which contains examples of the kinds of programme whose inclusion in the service proposed by any such applicant under subsection (3)(b) would be likely to result in a finding by [F34OFCOM] that the service would comply with the requirements [F35that have to be imposed under Chapter 4 of Part 3 of the Communications Act 2003 by conditions relating to— .
- (a) the public service remit for that service,
  - (b) programming quotas,
  - (c) news and current affairs programmes, and
  - (d) programme production and regional programming.]
- (3) Any application made in pursuance of a notice under this section must be in writing and accompanied by—
- (a) the fee specified in the notice under subsection (1)(d)(i);
  - (b) the applicant’s proposals for providing a service that would comply with the requirements [F36that have to be imposed under Chapter 4 of Part 3 of the Communications Act 2003 by conditions relating to—
    - (i) the public service remit for that service,
    - (ii) programming quotas,
    - (iii) news and current affairs programmes, and
    - (iv) programme production and regional programming]
  - F37(c) .....
  - F37(d) .....
  - F37(e) .....
  - (f) the applicant’s cash bid in respect of the licence;

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (g) such information as [F34OFCOM] may reasonably require as to the applicant's present financial position and his projected financial position during the period for which the licence would be in force; and
  - (h) such other information as [F34OFCOM] may reasonably require for the purpose of considering the application.
- [F38(3A) For the purposes of subsection (1)(d)(ii)—
- (a) different percentages may be specified for different accounting periods; and
  - (b) the percentages that may be specified for an accounting period include a nil percentage.]
- (4) At any time after receiving such an application and before determining it [F34OFCOM] may require the applicant to furnish additional information under any of [F39 paragraphs (b)], (g) and (h) of subsection (3).
  - (5) Any information to be furnished to [F34OFCOM] under this section shall, if they so require, be in such form or verified in such manner as they may specify.
  - (6) [F34OFCOM] shall, as soon as reasonably practicable after the date specified in a notice under this section as the closing date for applications, publish in such manner as they consider appropriate—
    - (a) the following matters, namely—
      - (i) the name of every person who has made an application to them in pursuance of the notice,
      - (ii) the proposals submitted by him under subsection (3)(b), and
      - (iii) such other information connected with his application as [F34OFCOM] consider appropriate; and
    - (b) a notice—
      - (i) inviting representations to be made to them with respect to any matters published by them in accordance with paragraph (a) (ii) and (iii) above, and
      - (ii) specifying the manner in which, and the time by which, any such representations are to be so made.
  - (7) In this Part “cash bid”, in relation to a licence, means an offer to pay to [F34OFCOM] a specified amount of money in respect of the first complete calendar year falling within the period for which the licence is in force (being an amount which, as increased by the appropriate percentage, is also to be payable in respect of subsequent years falling wholly or partly within that period).

#### Textual Amendments

- F34** Words in s. 15 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 7\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))
- F35** Words in s. 15(2) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 7\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))
- F36** Words in s. 15(3)(b) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 7\(4\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))
- F37** S. 15(3)(c)-(e) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 7\(4\)\(b\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))
- F38** S. 15(3A) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 7\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**F39** Words in s. 15(4) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 7\(6\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C13** Ss. 15-17A excluded (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 215\(3\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**16 Procedure to be followed by Commission in connection with consideration of applications for licences.**

(1) Where a person has made an application for a Channel 3 licence in accordance with section 15, [F40OFCOM] shall not proceed to consider whether to award him the licence on the basis of his cash bid in accordance with section 17 unless it appears to them—

- (a) that his proposed service would comply with the requirements [F41that have to be imposed under Chapter 4 of Part 3 of the Communications Act 2003 by conditions relating to—
  - (i) the public service remit for that service,
  - (ii) programming quotas,
  - (iii) news and current affairs programmes, and
  - (iv) programme production and regional programming], and
- (b) that he would be able to maintain that service throughout the period for which the licence would be in force,

and any reference to an applicant in section 17 (except in section 17(12)(b)) is accordingly a reference to an applicant in whose case it appears to [F40OFCOM] that the requirements of paragraphs (a) and (b) above are satisfied.

F42(2) .....

F42(3) .....

(4) In deciding whether an applicant’s proposed service would comply with the requirements [F43that have to be imposed under Chapter 4 of Part 3 of the Communications Act 2003 by conditions relating to—

- (a) the public service remit for that service,
- (b) programming quotas,
- (c) news and current affairs programmes, and
- (d) programme production and regional programming,]

[F40OFCOM] shall take into account any representations made to them in pursuance of section 15(6)(b) with respect to that service; F44 ....

F45(5) .....

F45(6) .....

F45(7) .....

F45(8) .....

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Textual Amendments

- F40** Words in s. 16 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 8\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F41** Words in s. 16(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 8\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F42** S. 16(2)(3) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 8\(4\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F43** Words in s. 16(4) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 8\(5\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F44** Words in s. 16(4) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 8\(5\)\(b\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F45** S. 16(5)-(8) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 8\(6\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C13** Ss. 15-17A excluded (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 215\(3\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

## 17 Award of licence to person submitting highest cash bid.

- (1) Subject to the following provisions of this section, [<sup>F46</sup>OFCOM] shall, after considering all the cash bids submitted by the applicants for a Channel 3 licence, award the licence to the applicant who submitted the highest bid.
- (2) Where two or more applicants for a particular licence have submitted cash bids specifying an identical amount which is higher than the amount of any other cash bid submitted in respect of the licence, then (unless they propose to exercise their power under subsection (3) in relation to the licence) [<sup>F46</sup>OFCOM] shall invite those applicants to submit further cash bids in respect of that licence; and, in relation to any person who has submitted a further cash bid in pursuance of this subsection, any reference in this Part to his cash bid is a reference to that further bid.
- (3) [<sup>F46</sup>OFCOM] may disregard the requirement imposed by subsection (1) and award the licence to an applicant who has not submitted the highest bid if it appears to them that there are exceptional circumstances which make it appropriate for them to award the licence to that applicant.
- (4) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (3), [<sup>F46</sup>OFCOM] may regard the following circumstances as exceptional circumstances which make it appropriate to award the licence to an applicant who has not submitted the highest bid, namely where it appears to [<sup>F46</sup>OFCOM] —
  - (a) that the quality of the service proposed by such an applicant is exceptionally high; and
  - (b) that the quality of that proposed service is substantially higher than the quality of the service proposed—
    - (i) by the applicant who has submitted the highest bid, or
    - (ii) in a case falling within subsection (2), by each of the applicants who have submitted equal highest bids;and where it appears to [<sup>F46</sup>OFCOM] , in the context of the licence, that any circumstances are to be regarded as exceptional circumstances for the

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

purposes of subsection (3), those circumstances may be so regarded by them despite the fact that similar circumstances have been so regarded by them in the context of any other licence or licences.

- (5) If it appears to [F46OFCOM] , in the case of the applicant to whom (apart from this subsection) they would award the licence in accordance with the preceding provisions of this section, that there are grounds for suspecting that any relevant source of funds is such that it would not be in the public interest for the licence to be awarded to him—
- (a) they shall refer his application to the Secretary of State, together with—
    - (i) a copy of all documents submitted to them by the applicant, and
    - (ii) a summary of their deliberations on the application; and
  - (b) they shall not award the licence to him unless the Secretary of State has given his approval.
- (6) On such a reference the Secretary of State may only refuse to give his approval to the licence being awarded to the applicant in question if he is satisfied that any relevant source of funds is such that it would not be in the public interest for the licence to be so awarded.
- (7) In subsections (5) and (6) “relevant source of funds”, in relation to an applicant, means any source of funds to which he might (directly or indirectly) have recourse for the purpose of—
- (a) paying any amounts payable by him by virtue of section 19(1), or
  - (b) otherwise financing the provision of his proposed service.
- (8) In a case where any requirement such as is mentioned in section 5(1)(b) operates to preclude [F46OFCOM] from awarding a licence to the applicant to whom (apart from any such requirement) they would have awarded it in accordance with the preceding provisions of this section, they shall award the licence in accordance with rules made by them for regulating the awarding of licences in such cases; and any such rules may provide for the awarding of licences by reference to orders of preference notified to [F46OFCOM] by applicants at the time of making their applications.
- (9) Any such rules shall be published by [F46OFCOM] in such manner as they consider appropriate, but shall not come into force unless they have been approved by the Secretary of State.
- (10) Where [F46OFCOM] are, by virtue of subsection (5), precluded from awarding the licence to an applicant, the preceding provisions of this section shall (subject to subsection (14)) have effect as if that person had not made an application for the licence.
- (11) Where [F46OFCOM] have awarded a Channel 3 licence to any person in accordance with this section, they shall, as soon as reasonably practicable after awarding the licence—
- (a) publish the matters specified in subsection (12) in such manner as they consider appropriate; and
  - (b) grant the licence to that person.
- (12) The matters referred to in subsection (11)(a) are—
- (a) the name of the person to whom the licence has been awarded and the amount of his cash bid;
  - (b) the name of every other applicant in whose case it appeared to [F46OFCOM] that his proposed service would comply with the requirements [F47] that have

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- to be imposed under Chapter 4 of Part 3 of the Communications Act 2003 by conditions relating to—
- (i) the public service remit for that service,
  - (ii) programming quotas,
  - (iii) news and current affairs programmes, and
  - (iv) programme production and regional programming];
- (c) where the licence has, by virtue of subsection (3) above, been awarded to an applicant who has not submitted the highest cash bid, [F46OFCOM]’s reasons for the licence having been so awarded; and
- (d) such other information as [F46OFCOM] consider appropriate.
- (13) In a case where the licence has been awarded to any person by virtue of the operation of this section, in accordance with any provision of this Part, on the revocation of an earlier grant of the licence, subsection (12) shall have effect as if—
- (a) paragraph (b) were omitted; and
  - (b) the matters specified in that subsection included an indication of the circumstances in which the licence has been awarded to that person.
- (14) Subsections (1) to (9) shall not have effect as mentioned in subsection (10) if [F46OFCOM] decide that it would be desirable to publish a fresh notice under section 15(1) in respect of the grant of the licence; and similarly, where any of the following provisions of this Part provides, in connection with the revocation of a licence, for this section to have effect as if the former holder of the licence had not made an application for it, this section shall not so have effect if [F46OFCOM] decide that it would be desirable to publish a further notice under this Part in respect of the grant of a further licence to provide the service in question.

#### Textual Amendments

- F46** Words in s. 17 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 9\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F47** Words in s. 17(12)(b) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 9\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C13** Ss. 15-17A excluded (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 215\(3\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- C14** S. 17 applied (with modifications) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 10 para. 5\(4\)\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- C15** S. 17(5)-(7) applied (with modifications) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 222\(5\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [s. 222\(11\), Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- C16** S. 17(5)-(7) applied (with modifications) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 216\(5\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### [F48]17A Award of Channel 3 licence subject to conditions.

- (1) [F49OFCOM] may, when awarding a Channel 3 licence to any person, make the grant of the licence to him conditional on his compliance before the grant with such specified requirements relating to the financing of the service as appear to them to be appropriate, having regard to—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) any duties which are or may be imposed on them, or on the licence holder, by or under this Act, and
  - (b) any information provided to them under section 15(3)(g) by the person to whom the licence is awarded as to his projected financial position during the period for which the licence would be in force.
- (2) Where [F49OFCOM] determine that any condition imposed by them in relation to a Channel 3 licence in pursuance of subsection (1) has not been satisfied, section 17 shall (subject to subsection (3)) have effect as if the person to whom the licence was awarded had not made an application for it.
- (3) Section 17 shall not so have effect if [F49OFCOM] decide that it would be desirable to publish a fresh notice under section 15(1) in respect of the grant of the licence.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F48** S. 17A inserted (1.10.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 86(1); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, Sch. 1

**F49** Words in ss. 17A-19 substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 10 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C13** Ss. 15-17A excluded (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), ss. 215(3), 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**C17** S. 17A applied (with modifications) (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 10 para. 5(4)(6) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

## 18 Failure to begin providing licensed service and financial penalties on revocation of licence.

- (1) If at any time after a Channel 3 licence has been granted to any person but before the licence has come into force—
- (a) that person indicates to [F49OFCOM] that he does not intend to provide the service in question, or
  - (b) [F49OFCOM] for any other reason have reasonable grounds for believing that that person will not provide that service once the licence has come into force,
- then, subject to subsection (2)—
- (i) [F49OFCOM] shall serve on him a notice revoking the licence as from the time the notice is served on him, and
  - (ii) section 17 shall (subject to section 17(14)) have effect as if he had not made an application for the licence.
- (2) Subsection (1) shall not apply in the case of any person by virtue of paragraph (b) of that subsection unless [F49OFCOM] have served on him a notice stating their grounds for believing that he will not provide the service in question once his licence has come into force; and they shall not serve such a notice on him unless they have given him a reasonable opportunity of making representations to them about the matters complained of.
- (3) Where [F49OFCOM] revoke a Channel 3 licence under this section or under any other provision of this Part, they shall serve on the licence holder a notice requiring him to pay to them, within a specified period, [F50a specified financial penalty].



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- [<sup>F51</sup>(3A) The maximum amount which a person may be required to pay by way of a penalty under subsection (3) is the maximum penalty given by subsections (3B) and (3C).
- (3B) In a case where the licence is revoked under this section or the penalty is imposed before the end of the first complete accounting period of the licence holder to fall within the period for which the licence is in force, the maximum penalty is whichever is the greater of—
- (a) £500,000; and
  - (b) 7 per cent. of the amount which OFCOM estimate would have been the qualifying revenue for the first complete accounting period of the licence holder falling within the period for which the licence would have been in force.
- (3C) In any other case, the maximum penalty is whichever is the greater of—
- (a) £500,000; and
  - (b) 7 per cent. of the qualifying revenue for the last complete accounting period of the licence holder falling within the period for which the licence is in force.
- (3D) Section 19(2) to (6) applies for estimating or determining qualifying revenue for the purposes of subsection (3B) or (3C) above.]
- (5) Any financial penalty payable by any body by virtue of subsection (3) shall, in addition to being recoverable from that body as provided by section 68(5), be recoverable by [<sup>F49</sup>OFCOM] as a debt due to them from any person who controls that body.

#### Textual Amendments

- F49** Words in ss. 17A-19 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 10](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F50** Words in s. 18(3) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 13 para. 2\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F51** S. 18(3A)-(3D) substituted for 18(4) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 13 para. 2\(2\)\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C18** S. 18(3B)(a): power to amend conferred (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 13 para. 9](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- C19** S. 18(3C)(a): power to amend conferred (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 13 para. 9](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- C20** S. 18(3) modified (1.11.1996) by [1996 c. 55, s. 145\(6\)\(a\)](#); [S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, Sch. 1](#); [S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, Sch. 2](#)

## 19 Additional payments to be made in respect of Channel 3 licences.

- (1) A Channel 3 licence shall include conditions requiring the licence holder to pay to [<sup>F49</sup>OFCOM] (in addition to any fees required to be so paid by virtue of section 4(1)(b))—
- (a) in respect of the first complete calendar year falling within the period for which the licence is in force, the amount specified in his cash bid;
  - (b) in respect of each subsequent year falling wholly or partly within that period, the amount so specified as increased by the appropriate percentage; and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (c) in respect of each accounting period of his falling within the period referred to in paragraph (a), an amount representing such percentage of the qualifying revenue for that accounting period as was specified in relation to the licence under section 15(1)(d)(ii).
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1)(c) the qualifying revenue for any accounting period of the licence holder shall (subject to subsection (6)) consist of all payments received or to be received by him or by any connected person—
- (a) in consideration of the inclusion in the licensed service in that period of advertisements or other programmes, or
- (b) in respect of charges made in that period for the reception of programmes included in that service.
- (3) If, in connection with the inclusion of any advertisements or other programmes whose inclusion is paid for by payments falling within subsection (2)(a), any payments are made to the licence holder or any connected person to meet any payments payable by the licence holder by virtue of subsection (1)(c), those payments shall be regarded as made in consideration of the inclusion of the programmes in question.
- (4) In the case of an advertisement included under arrangements made between—
- (a) the licence holder or any connected person, and
- (b) a person acting as an advertising agent,
- the amount of any receipt by the licence holder or any connected person that represents a payment by the advertiser from which the advertising agent has deducted any amount by way of commission shall, except in a case falling within subsection (5), be the amount of the payment by the advertiser after the deduction of [F49OFCOM] .
- (5) If the amount deducted by way of commission as mentioned in subsection (4) exceeds 15 per cent. of the payment by the advertiser, the amount of the receipt in question shall be taken to be the amount of the payment less 15 per cent.
- (6) If, in any accounting period of the licence holder, the licence holder or any connected person derives, in relation to any programme to be included in the licensed service, any financial benefit (whether direct or indirect) from payments made by any person, by way of sponsorship, for the purpose of defraying or contributing towards costs incurred or to be incurred in connection with that programme, the qualifying revenue for that accounting period shall be taken for the purposes of subsection (1)(c) to include the amount of the financial benefit so derived by the licence holder or the connected person, as the case may be.
- (7) A Channel 3 licence may include conditions—
- (a) enabling [F49OFCOM] to estimate before the beginning of an accounting period the amount due for that period by virtue of subsection (1)(c); and
- (b) requiring the licence holder to pay the estimated amount by monthly instalments throughout that period.
- (8) Such a licence may in particular include conditions—
- (a) authorising [F49OFCOM] to revise any estimate on one or more occasions, and to adjust the instalments payable by the licence holder to take account of the revised estimate;
- (b) providing for the adjustment of any overpayment or underpayment.
- (9) Where—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) the first complete accounting period of the licence holder falling within the period referred to in subsection (1)(a) (“the licence period”) does not begin at the same time as that period, or
- (b) the last complete accounting period of his falling within the licence period does not end at the same time as that period,

any reference in subsection (1)(c) to an accounting period of his shall include a reference to such part of the accounting period preceding that first complete accounting period, or (as the case may be) following that last complete accounting period, as falls within the licence period; and other references to accounting periods in this Part shall be construed accordingly.

- (10) In this Part “the appropriate percentage”, in relation to any year (“the relevant year”), means the percentage which corresponds to the percentage increase between—
  - (a) the retail prices index for the month of November in the year preceding the first complete calendar year falling within the period for which the licence in question is in force; and
  - (b) the retail prices index for the month of November in the year preceding the relevant year;

and for this purpose “the retail prices index” means the general index of prices (for all items) published by the <sup>F52</sup>Office for National Statistics].

**Textual Amendments**

- F49** Words in ss. 17A-19 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 10](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F52** Words in S. 19(10) substituted (1.4.1996) by [S.I. 1996/273, art. 5\(1\), Sch. 2 para. 25](#)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C21** S. 19(2)-(6) applied (with modifications) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 9 para. 8\(7\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- C22** S. 19(2)-(6) applied (with modifications) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 237\(5\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

<sup>F53</sup>**20 Duration and renewal of Channel 3 licences.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F53** S. 20 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**21 Restriction on changes in control over Channel 3 licence holder.**

- (1) Where—
  - (a) any change in the persons having control over—
    - (i) a body to which a Channel 3 licence has been awarded or transferred in accordance with this Part of this Act, or
    - (ii) an associated programme provider,

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

takes place within the relevant period, and

- (b) that change takes place without having been previously approved for the purposes of this section by [F54OFCOM],

then (subject to subsection (4)) [F54OFCOM] may, if the licence has not yet been granted, refuse to grant it to the body referred to in paragraph (a)(i) above or, if it has already been granted, serve on that body a notice revoking it.

- (2) In subsection (1)—

“associated programme provider”, in relation to such a body as is mentioned in paragraph (a)(i) of that subsection, means any body which is connected with that body and [F55:is or is likely to be involved, to a substantial extent, in the provision of the programmes included] in the licensed service; and

“the relevant period”, in relation to a Channel 3 licence, means the period beginning with the date of the award of the licence and ending on the first anniversary of the date of its coming into force;

and paragraph 3 in Part I of Schedule 2 to this Act shall have effect for the purposes of this subsection as if a body to which a Channel 3 licence has been awarded but not yet granted were the holder of such a licence.

- (3) [F54OFCOM] shall refuse to approve for the purposes of this section such a change as is mentioned in subsection (1)(a)—

- (a) if it appears to them that the change would be prejudicial to the provision under the licence, by the body referred to in subsection (1)(a)(i), of a service which accords with the proposals submitted under section 15(3)(b) by that body (or, as the case may be, by the person to whom the licence was originally awarded), or

- (b) it appears to them that the change would be prejudicial to the provision of Channel 3 as such a nationwide system of services as is mentioned in section 14(1);

and [F54OFCOM] may refuse so to approve any such change if, in any circumstances not falling within paragraph (a) or (b) above, they consider it appropriate to do so.

- (4) [F54OFCOM] shall not under subsection (1) refuse to grant a licence to, or serve a notice on, any body unless they have given it a reasonable opportunity of making representations to them about the matters complained of.

- (5) Where under subsection (1) [F54OFCOM] refuse to grant a licence to any body, section 17 shall (subject to section 17(14)) have effect as if that body had not made an application for the licence; and, where under that subsection they serve on any body a notice revoking its licence, subsections (6) and (7) of section 42 shall apply in relation to that notice as they apply in relation to a notice served under subsection (3) of that section.

#### Textual Amendments

**F54** Words in s. 21 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 11\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F55** Words in s. 21(2) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 11\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F56 21A Variation of regional Channel 3 licence following change of control.**

**Textual Amendments**

**F56** S. 21A repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**22 Temporary provision of regional Channel 3 service for additional area.**

- (1) Where it appears to <sup>F57</sup>OFCOM] —
- (a) that (whether as a result of the revocation of an existing regional Channel 3 licence or for any other reason) there will be, in the case of a particular area determined under section 14(2), a temporary lack of any regional Channel 3 service licensed to be provided for that area, but
  - (b) that it would be reasonably practicable for the holder of a licence to provide a regional Channel 3 service for any other such area to provide his licensed service for the area referred to in paragraph (a) as well,
- <sup>F57</sup>OFCOM] may invite the holder of that licence temporarily to provide his licensed service for that additional area.
- (2) If the holder of that licence agrees so to provide his licensed service, <sup>F57</sup>OFCOM] shall authorise the provision of that service for the additional area in question, during such period as they may determine, by means of a variation of the licence to that effect.

**Textual Amendments**

**F57** Words in s. 22 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 12](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

*Channel 4*

PROSPECTIVE

**23 The Channel Four Television Corporation.**

- (1) There shall be a corporation to be called the Channel Four Television Corporation (in this Part referred to as “the Corporation”).
- (2) The Corporation shall consist of—
- (a) a chairman and a deputy chairman appointed by <sup>F58</sup>OFCOM] ; and
  - (b) such number of other members, not being less than eleven nor more than thirteen, as <sup>F58</sup>OFCOM] may from time to time determine.
- (3) The other members referred to in subsection (2)(b) shall consist of—
- (a) persons appointed by <sup>F58</sup>OFCOM] ; and
  - (b) ex-officio members of the Corporation;

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

and the total number of members appointed by [<sup>F58</sup>OFCOM] under subsection (2)(a) and paragraph (a) above shall exceed the number of ex-officio members.

- (4) Any appointment made by [<sup>F58</sup>OFCOM] under subsection (2)(a) or (3)(a) shall require the approval of the Secretary of State.
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (3) the following persons shall be ex-officio members of the Corporation, namely—
  - (a) the chief executive of the Corporation; and
  - (b) such other employees of the Corporation as may for the time being be nominated by the chief executive and the chairman of the Corporation acting jointly.
- (6) Schedule 3 to this Act shall have effect with respect to the Corporation.

**Textual Amendments**

**F58** Words in s. 23 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 13](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C23** S. 23: transfer of functions (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 4](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

**24 Channel 4 to be provided by Corporation as licensed service.**

- (1) The function of the Corporation shall be to secure the continued provision (subject to and in accordance with the provisions of this Part) of the television broadcasting service known as Channel 4.
- (2) All the shares in the body corporate referred to in section 12(2) of the 1981 Act (activities to be carried on by subsidiary of Independent Broadcasting Authority) shall vest in the Corporation on 1st January 1993.
- (3) Channel 4 shall be provided by the Corporation under a licence granted to them by [<sup>F59</sup>OFCOM], and shall be so provided for so much of England, Scotland and Northern Ireland as may from time to time be reasonably practicable.

<sup>F60</sup>(4) .....

<sup>F60</sup>(5) .....

<sup>F61</sup>(6) .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F59** Words in s. 24(3) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 14](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

**F60** S. 24(4)(5) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

**F61** S. 24(6) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 199\(3\), 411\(2\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

PROSPECTIVE

**F62 25 Conditions to be included in Channel 4 licence.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F62** S. 25 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F63 26 Revenue deficits of Corporation to be funded by Channel 3 licensees.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F63** S. 26 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), ss. 201, 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 6 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F64 27 Application of excess revenues of Corporation.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F64** S. 27 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), ss. 201, 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 6 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

*Channel 5*

**28 Channel 5.**

- (1) [<sup>F65</sup>OFCOM] shall do all that they can to secure the provision of a television broadcasting service for any such minimum area of the United Kingdom as may be determined by them in accordance with subsection (2); and any such service shall be known as Channel 5.
- (2) In determining the minimum area of the United Kingdom for which Channel 5 is to be provided [<sup>F65</sup>OFCOM] shall have regard to the following consideration, namely that the service should, so far as is reasonably practicable, make the most effective use of the frequencies on which it is to be provided.
- (3) If [<sup>F65</sup>OFCOM] so determine, Channel 5 shall be provided under a particular licence only between such times of the day or on such days of the week (or both) as they may determine.
- (4) Where [<sup>F65</sup>OFCOM] have granted a licence to provide Channel 5, they may, if it appears to them to be appropriate to do so in view of any lack of facilities available



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

for transmitting the service, dispense with any requirement to provide the service for such part of the area referred to in subsection (2) as they may determine; and any such dispensation shall have effect for such period as they may determine.

**Textual Amendments**

**F65** Words in s. 28 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 15](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

**29 Application to Channel 5 of provisions relating to Channel 3.**

- (1) Subject to subsections (2) and (3), sections 15 to 21 shall apply in relation to a Channel 5 licence as they apply in relation to a regional Channel 3 licence.
- (2) In its application in relation to a Channel 5 licence—
  - (a) section 15(1)(b)(i) shall be read as referring to any such minimum area of the United Kingdom as is determined by [<sup>F66</sup>OFCOM] in accordance with section 28(2); <sup>F67</sup>...
  - <sup>F67</sup>(b) .....
  - <sup>F68</sup>(3) .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F66** Words in s. 29(2)(a) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 16\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

**F67** S. 29(2)(b) and the word immediately preceding it repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 16\(1\)\(a\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

**F68** S. 29(3) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 16\(1\)\(b\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

**<sup>F69</sup>30 Initial Channel 5 licensee required to retune equipment susceptible to interference.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F69** Ss. 30-36 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 280\(10\), s. 296\(11\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

*Provision of news programmes*

**<sup>F69</sup>31 Provision of news on Channels 3 and 5.**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**

**F69** Ss. 30-36 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 280(10), s. 296(11), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F69 31A Appointment of news provider by holders of regional Channel 3 licences.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F69** Ss. 30-36 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 280(10), s. 296(11), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F69 32 Nomination of bodies to provide news for regional Channel 3 services.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F69** Ss. 30-36 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 280(10), s. 296(11), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

*Miscellaneous provisions relating to Channels 3, 4 and 5*

**F69 33 Conditions requiring holder of Channel 3 or Channel 5 licence to deliver promised service.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F69** Ss. 30-36 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 280(10), s. 296(11), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F69 34 Schools programmes.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F69** Ss. 30-36 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 280(10), s. 296(11), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F69 35 Subtitling for the deaf.**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F69** Ss. 30-36 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 280(10), s. 296(11), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

### **F69** 36 Party political broadcasts.

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F69** Ss. 30-36 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 280(10), s. 296(11), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

### **37** Announcements of programme schedules.

- (1) Any Channel 3 licence or licence to provide Channel 4 may include conditions requiring the licence holder to include in the licensed service such announcements concerning relevant programme schedules as [<sup>F70</sup>OFCOM] may determine.
- (2) In this section “relevant programme schedules” means—
  - (a) in relation to a Channel 3 licence, programme schedules for programmes to be broadcast on Channel 4 and, where any part of the area for which the licensed service is to be provided is in Wales, programme schedules for programmes to be broadcast on S4C; and
  - (b) in relation to the licence to provide Channel 4, programme schedules for programmes to be included in any Channel 3 service.

#### Textual Amendments

**F70** Words in s. 37(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 17](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

### **38** Promotion of equal opportunities in relation to employment by licence holder.

- (1) Any Channel 3 licence or licence to provide Channel 4 or Channel 5 shall include conditions requiring the licence holder—
  - (a) to make arrangements for promoting, in relation to employment by him, equality of opportunity between men and women and between persons of different racial groups; and
  - (b) to review those arrangements from time to time.
- (2) In subsection (1) “racial group” has the same meaning as in the <sup>M1</sup>Race Relations Act 1976.

#### Marginal Citations

**M1** 1976 c. 74.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### **39 Networking arrangements between holders of regional Channel 3 licences.**

- (1) This section has effect with respect to the making of arrangements which—
- (a) apply to all the holders of regional Channel 3 licences, and
  - (b) provide for programmes made, commissioned or acquired by or on behalf of one or more of the holders of such licences to be available for broadcasting in all regional Channel 3 services,
- being arrangements made for the purpose of enabling regional Channel 3 services (taken as a whole) to be a nationwide system of such services which is able to compete effectively with other television programme services provided in the United Kingdom; and any such arrangements are referred to in this section as “networking arrangements”.
- (2) Any application for a regional Channel 3 licence shall, in addition to being accompanied by any such proposals as are mentioned in section 15(3)(b) to (e), be accompanied by the applicant’s proposals for participating in networking arrangements made under this section; and—
- (a) where a person has duly made such an application, the Commission—
    - (i) shall, as soon as reasonably practicable after the closing date for applications for the licence, send details of his proposals for participating in such arrangements to the [<sup>F71</sup>the Office of Fair Trading], and
    - (ii) (without prejudice to the operation of section 16(1)) shall not proceed to consider whether to award him the licence as mentioned in that provision unless it appears to the Commission that any such proposals are satisfactory; and
  - (b) section 33 shall apply to any such proposals as it applies to the proposals submitted by the applicant under section 15(3)(c) to (e).
- (3) The Commission may publish, in such manner as they consider appropriate, general guidance to applicants for a regional Channel 3 licence as to the kinds of proposals which they would consider satisfactory for the purposes of subsection (2)(a); but before doing so the Commission—
- (a) shall consult [<sup>F72</sup>the Office of Fair Trading], and
  - (b) if [<sup>F73</sup>it] requests them to make any change in the guidance, shall incorporate the change in the guidance.
- (4) Each regional Channel 3 licence shall include conditions requiring the licence holder to do all that he can to secure—
- (a) (in the case of a licence granted before the relevant date) that, by that date, networking arrangements have been made which—
    - (i) have been entered into by all the holders of regional Channel 3 licences, and
    - (ii) have been approved by the Commission; and
  - (b) (in any case) that, so long as he provides his licensed service, there are in force networking arrangements which have been so entered into and approved (unless there are for the time being in force any arrangements made by the Commission under subsection (5)).
- (5) If—
- (a) no such arrangements as are mentioned in subsection (4)(a) are made by the relevant date, or

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) any such arrangements are so made but cease to be in force at any time before 1st January 1995,
- the Commission may themselves draw up such networking arrangements as they consider appropriate; and, if they do so—
- (i) they shall notify all the holders of regional Channel 3 licences of those arrangements, and
- (ii) those arrangements shall (subject to subsection (6)) come into force on a date determined by the Commission;
- and each regional Channel 3 licence shall include conditions requiring the licence holder to give effect to any arrangements made by the Commission under this subsection as for the time being in force.
- (6) No arrangements made by the Commission under subsection (5) shall come into force at any time after 31st December 1994.
- (7) Where—
- (a) any such arrangements have come into force in accordance with subsection (6), but
- (b) any networking arrangements are subsequently—
- (i) entered into by all the holders of regional Channel 3 licences, and
- (ii) approved by the Commission,
- the arrangements referred to in paragraph (a) shall cease to have effect on the coming into force of the arrangements referred to in paragraph (b).
- (8) Where any arrangements have been approved by the Commission under subsection (4) or (7)(b), no modification of those arrangements shall be made by the holders of regional Channel 3 licences unless it too has been so approved.
- (9) Where any arrangements have been made by the Commission under subsection (5), they may (whether before or after the date specified in subsection (6)) make such modification of those arrangements as they consider appropriate; and, if they do so—
- (a) they shall notify all the holders of regional Channel 3 licences of the modification, and
- (b) the modification shall come into force on a date determined by the Commission.
- <sup>F74</sup>(9A) The matters to which the Commission shall have regard in deciding whether to approve any arrangements or modification under subsection (4) or (8) include the likely effect of the arrangements in question, or (as the case may be) those arrangements as proposed to be modified, on the ability of the holders of regional Channel 3 licences to maintain the quality and range—
- (a) of the regional programmes (as defined by section 21A(9)) included in each regional Channel 3 service, and
- (b) of the other programmes included in each service which contribute to the regional character of the service.]
- <sup>F75</sup>[(10) Without prejudice to the generality of their power to refuse to approve any arrangements or modification under subsection (4) or (8), the Commission shall refuse to do so if—
- (a) they are not satisfied that the arrangements in question, or (as the case may be) those arrangements as proposed to be modified, would be appropriate for the purpose mentioned in subsection (1), or

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) it appears to them that the arrangements in question, or (as the case may be) those arrangements as proposed to be modified, would be likely to prejudice the ability of the holder of any regional Channel 3 licence to comply with—
- (i) any condition imposed in pursuance of section 33(1), for the purpose of securing the implementation of proposals relating to the matters specified in section 16(2)(c), or
  - (ii) any condition imposed in pursuance of subsection (3) of section 21A in relation to the matters specified in paragraph (a) of that subsection.]
- (11) Where the Commission have—
- (a) approved any arrangements or modification under subsection (4), (7)(b) or (8), or
  - (b) given with respect to any arrangements or modification the notification required by subsection (5)(i) or (9)(a),
- they shall, as soon as reasonably practicable after giving their approval or (as the case may be) that notification—
- (i) publish details of the arrangements or modification in such manner as they consider appropriate, and
  - (ii) comply with the appropriate requirement specified in subsection (12) (a) or (b).
- (12) The appropriate requirement referred to in paragraph (ii) of subsection (11) is—
- (a) in the case of any such arrangements as are referred to in paragraph (a) or (b) of that subsection, to refer those arrangements to [<sup>F76</sup>the Office of Fair Trading], and
  - (b) in the case of any such modification as is so referred to, to inform [<sup>F77</sup>it] of that modification;
- and Schedule 4 to this Act shall have effect with respect to any reference made under paragraph (a) above and matters arising out of any such reference, including the subsequent modification of the arrangements to which it relates.
- (13) In this section “the relevant date” means the date which the Commission determine to be that by which any such arrangements as are mentioned in subsection (4) would need to have been made by the holders of regional Channel 3 licences in order for the arrangements to be fully in operation at the time when those persons begin to provide their licensed services.

#### Textual Amendments

- F71** Words in s. 39(2) substituted (1.4.2003) by [Enterprise Act 2002 \(c. 40\), s. 279, Sch. 25 para. 24\(3\)\(a\)](#); [S.I. 2003/766, art. 2, Sch.](#) (with [art. 3](#)) (as amended (20.7.2007) by [S.I. 2007/1846, reg. 3\(2\), Sch.](#))
- F72** Words in s. 39(3) substituted (1.4.2003) by [Enterprise Act 2002 \(c. 40\), s. 279, Sch. 25 para. 24\(3\)\(b\) \(i\)](#); [S.I. 2003/766, art. 2, Sch.](#) (with [art. 3](#)) (as amended (20.7.2007) by [S.I. 2007/1846, reg. 3\(2\), Sch.](#))
- F73** Word in s. 39(3) substituted (1.4.2003) by [Enterprise Act 2002 \(c. 40\), s. 279, Sch. 25 para. 24\(3\)\(b\) \(ii\)](#); [S.I. 2003/766, art. 2, Sch.](#) (with [art. 3](#)) (as amended (20.7.2007) by [S.I. 2007/1846, reg. 3\(2\), Sch.](#))
- F74** S. 39(9A) inserted (1.10.1996) by [1996 c. 55, s. 79\(2\)](#) (with s. 43(1)(6)); [S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4 Sch. 1](#)
- F75** S. 39(10) substituted (1.10.1996) by [1996 c. 55, s. 79\(3\)](#) (with s. 43(1)(6)); [S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, Sch. 1](#)
- F76** Words in s. 39(12) substituted (1.4.2003) by [Enterprise Act 2002 \(c. 40\), s. 279, Sch. 25 para. 24\(3\)\(c\) \(i\)](#); [S.I. 2003/766, art. 2, Sch.](#) (with [art. 3](#)) (as amended (20.7.2007) by [S.I. 2007/1846, reg. 3\(2\), Sch.](#))

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F77** Word in s. 39(12) substituted (1.4.2003) by [Enterprise Act 2002 \(c. 40\), s. 279, Sch. 25 para. 24\(3\)\(c\)\(ii\)](#); [S.I. 2003/766, art. 2, Sch.](#) (with [art. 3](#)) (as amended (20.7.2007) by [S.I. 2007/1846, reg. 3\(2\), Sch.](#))

### *Enforcement of licences*

#### **40 Power to direct licensee to broadcast correction or [<sup>F78</sup>a statement of findings] or not to repeat programme.**

- (1) If [<sup>F79</sup>OFCOM] are satisfied—
- (a) that the holder of a Channel 3 or Channel 5 licence has failed to comply with any condition of the licence, and
  - (b) that that failure can be appropriately remedied by the inclusion in the licensed service of a correction or [<sup>F78</sup>a statement of findings] (or both) under this subsection,
- they may (subject to subsection (2)) direct the licence holder to include in the licensed service a correction or [<sup>F78</sup>a statement of findings] (or both) in such form, and at such time or times, as they may determine.
- (2) [<sup>F79</sup>OFCOM] shall not give any person a direction under subsection (1) unless they have given him a reasonable opportunity of making representations to them about the matters complained of.
- (3) Where the holder of a licence includes a correction or [<sup>F78</sup>a statement of findings] in the licensed service in pursuance of a direction under subsection (1), he may announce that he is doing so in pursuance of such a direction.
- (4) If [<sup>F79</sup>OFCOM] are satisfied that the inclusion by the holder of a Channel 3 or Channel 5 licence of any programme in the licensed service involved a failure by him to comply with any condition of the licence, they may direct him not to include that programme in that service on any future occasion.
- (5) This section shall apply in relation to Channel 4 as if any reference to a Channel 3 licence were a reference to the licence to provide Channel 4.
- [<sup>F80</sup>(6) For the purposes of this section a statement of findings, in relation to a case in which OFCOM are satisfied that the holder of a licence has contravened the conditions of his licence, is a statement of OFCOM's findings in relation to that contravention.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F78** Words in s. 40 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 344\(2\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))
- F79** Words in ss. 40-42 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 18\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))
- F80** S. 40(6) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 344\(3\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

#### **Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C24** S. 40 applied (with modifications) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 10 para. 8\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))
- C25** S. 40(1)-(4) applied (1.10.1996) by [1996 c. 55, s. 23\(8\)](#) (with [s. 43\(1\)\(6\)](#)); [S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, Sch. 1](#)  
 S. 40(1)-(4) applied (1.10.1996) by [1996 c. 55, s. 27\(8\)](#) (with [s. 43\(1\)\(6\)](#)); [S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, Sch. 1](#)



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

#### 41 Power to impose financial penalty or shorten licence period.

- (1) If [<sup>F79</sup>OFCOM] are satisfied that the holder of a Channel 3 or Channel 5 licence has failed to comply with any condition of the licence or with any direction given by [<sup>F79</sup>OFCOM] under or by virtue of any provision of this Part [<sup>F81</sup>, Part 5 of the Broadcasting Act 1996 or Part 3 of the Communications Act 2003], they may (subject to the following provisions of this section) serve on him—
- (a) a notice requiring him to pay, within a specified period, a specified financial penalty to [<sup>F79</sup>OFCOM]; or
  - (b) a notice reducing the period for which the licence is to be in force by a specified period not exceeding two years.

[<sup>F82</sup>(1A) The amount of a financial penalty imposed on a person in pursuance of subsection (1) (a) shall not exceed 5 per cent. of the qualifying revenue for the licence holder's last complete accounting period falling within the period for which his licence has been in force ("the relevant period").

(1B) In relation to a person whose first complete accounting period falling within the relevant period has not ended when the penalty is imposed, subsection (1A) is to be construed as referring to 5 per cent. of the amount which OFCOM estimate to be the qualifying revenue for that accounting period.

(1C) Section 19(2) to (6) applies for determining or estimating qualifying revenue for the purposes of subsection (1A) or (1B) above.]

- (3) [<sup>F79</sup>OFCOM] shall not serve on any person such a notice as is mentioned in subsection (1)(a) or (b) unless they have given him a reasonable opportunity of making representations to them about the matters complained of.
- (4) Where a licence is due to expire on a particular date by virtue of a notice served on any person under subsection (1)(b), [<sup>F79</sup>OFCOM] may, on the application of that person, revoke that notice by a further notice served on him at any time before that date, if they are satisfied that, since the date of the earlier notice, his conduct in relation to the operation of the licensed service has been such as to justify the revocation of that notice.
- (5) It is hereby declared that any exercise by [<sup>F79</sup>OFCOM] of their powers under subsection (1) of this section in respect of any failure to comply with any condition of a licence shall not preclude any exercise by them of their powers under section 40 in respect of that failure.
- (6) This section shall apply in relation to Channel 4 as if—
- (a) any reference to a Channel 3 licence were a reference to the licence to provide Channel 4; and
  - (b) subsection (1)(b) were omitted.

#### Textual Amendments

**F79** Words in ss. 40-42 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 18\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F81** Words in s. 41(1) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 18\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F82** S. 41(1A)-(1C) substituted for s. 41(2) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 13 para. 3\(1\)\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## 42 Power to revoke Channel 3 or 5 licence.

- (1) If [F79]OFCOM] are satisfied—
- (a) that the holder of a Channel 3 or Channel 5 licence is failing to comply with any condition of the licence or with any direction given by them under or by virtue of any provision of this Part [F83], Part 5 of the Broadcasting Act 1996 or Part 3 of the Communications Act 2003], and
  - (b) that that failure is such that, if not remedied, it would justify the revocation of the licence,
- they shall (subject to subsection (8)) serve on the holder of the licence a notice under subsection (2).
- (2) A notice under this subsection is a notice—
- (a) stating that [F79]OFCOM] are satisfied as mentioned in subsection (1);
  - (b) specifying the respects in which, in their opinion, the licence holder is failing to comply with any such condition or direction as is there mentioned; and
  - (c) stating that, unless the licence holder takes, within such period as is specified in the notice, such steps to remedy the failure as are so specified, [F79]OFCOM] will revoke his licence under subsection (3).
- (3) If at the end of the period specified in a notice under subsection (2) [F79]OFCOM] are satisfied—
- (a) that the person on whom the notice was served has failed to take the steps specified in it, and
  - (b) that it is necessary in the public interest to revoke his licence,
- they shall (subject to subsection (8)) serve on that person a notice revoking his licence.
- (4) If [F79]OFCOM] are satisfied in the case of any Channel 3 or Channel 5 licence—
- (a) that the holder of the licence has ceased to provide the licensed service before the end of the period for which the licence is to continue in force, and
  - (b) that it is appropriate for them to do so,
- they shall (subject to subsection (8)) serve on him a notice revoking his licence.
- (5) If [F79]OFCOM] are satisfied—
- (a) that the holder of a Channel 3 or Channel 5 licence provided them, in connection with his application for the licence, with information which was false in a material particular, or
  - (b) that, in connection with his application for the licence, the holder of such a licence withheld any material information with the intention of causing them to be misled,
- they may (subject to subsection (8)) serve on him a notice revoking his licence.
- (6) Subject to subsection (7), any notice served under subsection (3), (4) or (5) shall take effect as from the time when it is served on the licence holder.
- (7) If it appears to [F79]OFCOM] to be appropriate to do so for the purpose of preserving continuity in the provision of the service in question, they may provide in any such notice for it to take effect as from a date specified in it.
- (8) [F79]OFCOM] shall not serve any notice on a person under this section unless they have given him a reasonable opportunity of making representations to them about the matters complained of.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F79** Words in ss. 40-42 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 18\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F83** Words in s. 42(1)(a) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 18\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C26** S. 42 modified (1.10.1996) by [1996 c. 55, s. 4\(5\)\(6\)](#) (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, [Sch. 1](#)
- C27** S. 42 extended (with modifications) (1.10.1996) by [1996 c. 55, s. 17\(6\)](#) (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, [Sch. 1](#)
- C28** S. 42 applied (with modifications) (1.10.1996) by [1996 c. 55, s. 23\(8\)\(9\)](#) (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, [Sch. 1](#)
- S. 42 applied (with modifications) (1.10.1996) by [1996 c. 55, s. 27\(8\)\(9\)](#) (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, [Sch. 1](#)
- S. 42 applied (1.10.1996) by [1996 c. 55, s. 27\(8\)](#) (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, [Sch. 1](#)
- C29** S. 42 applied (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 10 para. 11](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

## <sup>F84</sup>[CHAPTER IIA

### RESTRICTED SERVICES

#### Textual Amendments

- F84** Chapter heading and Ss. 42A, 42B inserted (1.4.1997) by [1996 c. 55, s. 85](#) (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1997/1005, [art. 4](#)

#### 42A Restricted services.

In this Part “restricted service” means a service which—

- (a) consists in the broadcasting of television programmes for a particular establishment or other defined location, or a particular event, in the United Kingdom,<sup>F85</sup>...

<sup>F85</sup>(b) .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F85** S. 42A(b) and the word immediately preceding it repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### 42B Licensing etc. of restricted services.

- (1) An application for a licence to provide a restricted service shall be made in such manner as [<sup>F86</sup>OFCOM] may determine, and shall be accompanied by such fee (if any) as [<sup>F86</sup>OFCOM] may determine.
- (2) Subject to [<sup>F87</sup>subsections (3) to (3C)], sections 40 to 42 shall apply in relation to such a licence as they apply in relation to a licence to provide a Channel 3 service.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(3) In its application to a licence to provide a restricted service, section 41 shall have effect with the omission of [F88 subsections (1A) to (1C)]; and the maximum amount which the holder of such a licence may be required to pay by way of a financial penalty imposed in pursuance of subsection (1)(a) of that section [F89 is the maximum penalty given by subsection (3A).]

[F90(3A) The maximum penalty is whichever is the greater of—

- (a) £250,000; and
- (b) 5 per cent. of the qualifying revenue for the licence holder's last complete accounting period falling within the period for which his licence has been in force ("the relevant period").

(3B) In relation to a person whose first complete accounting period falling within the relevant period has not ended when the penalty is imposed, subsection (3A)(b) is to be construed as referring to 5 per cent. of the amount which OFCOM estimate to be the qualifying revenue for that accounting period.

(3C) Section 19(2) to (6) applies for determining or estimating qualifying revenue for the purposes of subsection (3A) or (3B) above.]]

#### Textual Amendments

- F86** Words in s. 42B(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 19](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F87** Words in s. 42B(2) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 13 para. 4\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F88** Words in s. 42B(3) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 13 para. 4\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F89** Words in s. 42B(3) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 13 para. 4\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F90** Ss. 42B(3A)-(3C) substituted for 42B(4) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 13 para. 4\(3\)\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C30** S. 42B(3A)(a): power to amend conferred (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 13 para. 9](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

## F91 CHAPTER III

### SATELLITE TELEVISION SERVICES

#### Textual Amendments

- F91** Pt. I Ch. III repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

F91 43 **Satellite television services.**

.....

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

<sup>F91F92</sup>**44 Licensing etc. of domestic satellite services.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F92** S. 44 repealed (11.7.1997) by [S.I. 1997/1682](#), arts. 1(2), 2, [Sch. para. 4](#)

<sup>F91</sup>**45 Licensing etc. of satellite television services.**

.....

<sup>F91</sup>**45A Special power of revocation and suspension on certain grounds in case of licence to provide satellite television service.**

.....

<sup>F93</sup>**CHAPTER IV.**

LICENSABLE PROGRAMME SERVICES

**Textual Amendments**

**F93** Pt. I Ch. IV repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

<sup>F93</sup>**46 Licensable programme services.**

.....

<sup>F93</sup>**47 Licensing etc. of licensable programme services.**

.....

**CHAPTER V**

ADDITIONAL SERVICES PROVIDED ON TELEVISION BROADCASTING FREQUENCIES

**48 Additional services.**

- (1) In this Part “additional service” means any service which consists in the sending of [<sup>F94</sup>electronic] signals for transmission by wireless telegraphy by means of the use of the spare capacity within the signals carrying any television broadcasting service provided—[<sup>F95</sup> on a relevant frequency].
- (2) For the purposes of this Part the spare capacity within the signals carrying any such broadcasting service shall be taken to be—[<sup>F96</sup>any part of the signals which—
  - (a) is not required for the purposes of the television broadcasting service for the purposes of which the frequency has been made available; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(b) is determined by OFCOM to be available for the provision of additional services;]

and references in this Part to spare capacity shall be construed accordingly.

[<sup>F97</sup>(2A) For the purposes of this Part, if they consider it appropriate to do so, OFCOM may, while an additional services licence is in force, from time to time modify the determination made under subsection (2)(b) for the purposes of that licence in any manner that does not reduce the amount of spare capacity made available for the licensed services; and when so modified any such licence shall have effect accordingly.]

(3) [<sup>F98</sup>OF COM] shall, when determining under subsection [<sup>F99</sup>(2)(b)] the extent and nature of the spare capacity available for the provision of additional services in the case of any frequency, have regard—

[<sup>F100</sup>(a) to the obligations contained in any code under section 303 of the Communications Act 2003 by virtue of subsection (5) of that section; and

(aa) to any need of the person providing the television broadcasting service in question to be able to use part of the signals carrying it for providing services (in addition to those provided for satisfying those obligations) which—

(i) are ancillary to programmes included in the service and directly related to their contents; or

(ii) relate to the promotion or listing of such programmes.]

(4) A person holding a licence to provide a Channel 3 service or Channel 4 or 5 shall be taken for the purposes of this Part to be authorised by his licence—

[<sup>F101</sup>(a) to provide services for the satisfaction in his case of obligations mentioned in subsection (3)(a); and

(b) to provide in relation to his television broadcasting service any such services as are mentioned in subsection (3)(aa).]

<sup>F102</sup>(5) . . . . .

[<sup>F103</sup>(6) In this section—

“electronic signals” means signals within the meaning of section 32 of the Communications Act 2003;

“relevant frequency” means a frequency made available by OFCOM for the purposes of a television broadcasting service.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F94** Words in s. 48(1) substituted (25.7.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 20\(2\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 15 para. 20\(8\), Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/1900, art. 2(1), Sch. 1

**F95** Words in s. 48(1) substituted for s. 48(1)(a)(b) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 20\(2\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 15 para. 20\(8\), Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**F96** Words in s. 48(2) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 20\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 15 para. 20\(8\), Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**F97** S. 48(2A) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 20\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 15 para. 20\(8\), Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**F98** Words in s. 48(3) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 20\(5\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 15 para. 20\(8\), Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- F99** Words in s. 48(3) substituted (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 20(5)(b)** (with **Sch. 15 para. 20(8), Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F100** S. 48(3)(a)-(aa) substituted for s. 48(3)(a)-(c) (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 20(5)(c)** (with **Sch. 15 para. 20(8), Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F101** S. 48(4)(a)(b) substituted (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 20(6)** (with **Sch. 15 para. 20(8), Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F102** S. 48(5) repealed (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with **Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F103** S. 48(6) substituted (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 20(7)** (with **Sch. 15 para. 20(8), Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

#### 49 Licensing of additional services.

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), [<sup>F104</sup>OFCOM] shall do all that they can to secure that, in the case of each [<sup>F105</sup>relevant frequency], all of the spare capacity available for the provision of additional services on that frequency is used for the provision of such services under additional services licences granted by [<sup>F104</sup>OFCOM] in accordance with this section.
- [<sup>F106</sup>(1A) An additional services licence is not required for an additional service that is comprised in the public teletext service (within the meaning of Part 3 of the Communications Act 2003).]
- (4) An additional services licence may relate to the use of spare capacity within more than one frequency; and two or more additional services licences may relate to the use of spare capacity within the same frequency where it is to be used at different times, or in different areas, in the case of each of those licences.
- (5) An additional services licence may include provisions enabling the licence holder, subject to and in accordance with such conditions as [<sup>F104</sup>OFCOM] may impose, to authorise any person to whom this subsection applies to provide any additional service on the spare capacity allocated by the licence.
- (6) Subsection (5) applies to any person who is not a disqualified person in relation to an additional services licence by virtue of Part II of Schedule 2 to this Act.
- (7) Any conditions included in an additional services licence shall apply in relation to the provision of additional services by a person authorised as mentioned in subsection (5) as they apply in relation to the provision of such services by the licence holder; and any failure by such a person to comply with any such conditions shall be treated for the purposes of this Part as a failure on the part of the licence holder to comply with those conditions.
- (8) Every licence under this Part to provide a television broadcasting service shall include such conditions as appear to [<sup>F104</sup>OFCOM] to be appropriate for securing that the licence holder grants—
- (a) to any person who holds a licence to provide additional services on the frequency on which that broadcasting service is provided, and
  - (b) to any person who is authorised by any such person as mentioned in subsection (5) to provide additional services on that frequency,
- access to facilities reasonably required by that person for the purposes of, or in connection with, the provision of any such additional services.



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (9) Any person who grants to any other person access to facilities in accordance with conditions imposed under subsection (8) may require that other person to pay a reasonable charge in respect thereof; and any dispute as to the amount of any such charge shall be determined by [F104OFCOM] .
- (10) In this Part “additional services licence” means a licence to provide additional services [F107] and “relevant frequency” has the same meaning as in section 48.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F104** Words in s. 49 substituted (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 21(2)** (with **Sch. 18**); **S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1** (with art. 11)
- F105** Words in s. 49(1) substituted for s. 49(1)(a)(b) (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 21(3)** (with **Sch. 18**); **S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1** (with art. 11)
- F106** S. 49(1A) substituted for s. 49(2)(3) (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 21(4)** (with **Sch. 18**); **S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1** (with arts. 8, 11)
- F107** Words in s. 49(10) inserted (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 21(5)** (with **Sch. 18**); **S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1** (with art. 11)

## 50 Applications for additional services licences.

- (1) Where [F108OFCOM] propose to grant a licence to provide additional services they shall publish, in such manner as they consider appropriate, a notice—
- (a) stating that they propose to grant such a licence;
  - (b) specifying—
    - (i) the television broadcasting service or services on whose frequency or frequencies the services are to be provided, and
    - (ii) [F109] ... the extent and nature of the spare capacity which is to be allocated by the licence;
  - (c) inviting applications for the licence and specifying the closing date for such applications; and
  - (d) specifying—
    - (i) the fee payable on any application made in pursuance of the notice, and
    - (ii) the percentage of qualifying revenue for each accounting period that would be payable by an applicant in pursuance of section 52(1)(c) if he were granted the licence.
- (2) [F108OFCOM] may, if they think fit, specify under subsection (1)(d)(ii)—
- (a) different percentages in relation to different accounting periods falling within the period for which the licence would be in force;
  - (b) a nil percentage in relation to any accounting period so falling.
- (3) Any application made in pursuance of a notice under this section must be in writing and accompanied by—
- (a) the fee specified in the notice under subsection (1)(d)(i);
  - (b) a technical plan indicating—
    - (i) the nature of any additional services which the applicant proposes to provide, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (ii) so far as known to the applicant, the nature of any additional services which any other person proposes to provide in accordance with section 49(5);
  - (c) the applicant's cash bid in respect of the licence; and
  - (d) such information as [F108OFCOM] may reasonably require as to the applicant's present financial position and his projected financial position during the period for which the licence would be in force.
- (4) At any time after receiving such an application and before determining it [F108OFCOM] may require the applicant to furnish additional information under subsection (3)(b) or (d).
- (5) Any information to be furnished to [F108OFCOM] under this section shall, if they so require, be in such form or verified in such manner as they may specify.
- (6) [F108OFCOM] shall, as soon as reasonably practicable after the date specified in a notice under this section as the closing date for applications, publish in such manner as they consider appropriate—
- (a) the name of every person who has made an application to them in pursuance of the notice;
  - (b) particulars of the technical plan submitted by him under subsection (3)(b); and
  - (c) such other information connected with his application as [F108OFCOM] consider appropriate.

F110(7) .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F108** Words in s. 50 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 22\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F109** Words in s. 50(1)(b)(ii) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 22\(3\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F110** S. 50(7) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 22\(4\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

## 51 Procedure to be followed by Commission in connection with consideration of applications for, and awarding of, licences.

- (1) Where a person has made an application for an additional services licence in accordance with section 50, [F111OFCOM] shall not proceed to consider whether to award him the licence on the basis of his cash bid in accordance with subsections (3) and (4) below unless it appears to them—
- [F112(a)] that the technical plan submitted under section 50(3)(b), in so far as it involves the use of an electronic communications network (within the meaning of the [Communications Act 2003](#)), contains proposals that are acceptable to them; and]
  - (b) that the services proposed to be provided under the licence would be capable of being maintained throughout the period for which the licence would be in force;

and any reference to an applicant in section 17 (as applied by subsection (3) below) is accordingly a reference to an applicant in whose case it appears to [F111OFCOM] that the requirements of paragraphs (a) and (b) above are satisfied.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

<sup>F113</sup>(2) .....

(3) Subject to subsection (4), [<sup>F114</sup>section s17 and 17A] shall apply in relation to an additional services licence as [<sup>F114</sup>they apply] in relation to a Channel 3 licence.

(4) In the application of section 17 in relation to an additional services licence—

(a) the provisions of subsection (4) down to the end of paragraph (b) shall be omitted;

(b) in subsection (7)(a), the reference to section 19(1) shall be construed as a reference to section 52(1); and

(c) subsection (12) shall have effect with the substitution of the following paragraph for paragraph (b)—

“(b) the name of every other applicant in whose case it appeared to [<sup>F111</sup>OFCOM] that the requirement specified in section 51(1) (a) was satisfied;”.

(5) If at any time after an additional services licence has been granted to any person but before the licence has come into force—

(a) that person indicates to [<sup>F111</sup>OFCOM] that none of the services in question will be provided once the licence has come into force, or

(b) [<sup>F111</sup>OFCOM] for any other reason have reasonable grounds for believing that none of those services will be so provided,

then, subject to subsection (6)—

(i) [<sup>F111</sup>OFCOM] shall serve on him a notice revoking the licence as from the time the notice is served on him, and

(ii) section 17 (as applied by subsection (3) above) shall, subject to section 17(14), have effect as if he had not made an application for the licence.

(6) Subsection (5) shall not apply in the case of any person by virtue of paragraph (b) of that subsection unless [<sup>F111</sup>OFCOM] have served on him a notice stating their grounds for believing that none of the services in question will be provided once his licence has come into force; and they shall not serve such a notice on him unless they have given him a reasonable opportunity of making representations to them about the matters complained of.

<sup>F115</sup>(7) .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F111** Words in s. 51 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 23\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F112** S. 51(1)(a) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 23\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F113** S. 51(2) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 23\(4\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F114** Words in S. 51(3) substituted (1.10.1996) by [1996 c. 55, s. 86\(2\)](#) (with [s. 43\(1\)\(6\)](#)); [S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, Sch. 1](#)

**F115** S. 51(7) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 23\(4\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## 52 Additional payments to be made in respect of additional services licences.

- (1) An additional services licence shall include conditions requiring the licence holder to pay to [F116OFCOM] (in addition to any fees required to be so paid by virtue of section 4(1)(b))—
- (a) in respect of the first complete calendar year falling within the period for which the licence is in force, the amount specified in his cash bid;
  - (b) in respect of each subsequent year falling wholly or partly within that period, the amount so specified as increased by the appropriate percentage; and
  - (c) in respect of each accounting period of his falling within the period referred to in paragraph (a), an amount representing such percentage of the qualifying revenue for that accounting period as was specified in relation to the licence under section 50(1)(d)(ii).
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1)(c) the qualifying revenue for any accounting period of the licence holder shall consist of all amounts which are received or to be received by him or by any connected person and are referable to the right under his licence to use, or to authorise any other person to use, in that period the spare capacity allocated by the licence.
- (3) An additional services licence may include conditions—
- (a) enabling [F116OFCOM] to estimate before the beginning of an accounting period the amount due for that period by virtue of subsection (1)(c); and
  - (b) requiring the licence holder to pay the estimated amount by monthly instalments throughout that period.
- (4) Such a licence may in particular include conditions—
- (a) authorising [F116OFCOM] to revise any estimate on one or more occasions, and to adjust the instalments payable by the licence holder to take account of the revised estimate;
  - (b) providing for the adjustment of any overpayment or underpayment.
- (5) Where—
- (a) the first complete accounting period of the licence holder falling within the period referred to in subsection (1)(a) (“the licence period”) does not begin at the same time as that period, or
  - (b) the last complete accounting period of his falling within the licence period does not end at the same time as that period,
- any reference in subsection (1)(c) to an accounting period of his shall include a reference to such part of the accounting period preceding that first complete accounting period, or (as the case may be) following that last complete accounting period, as falls within the licence period; and other references to accounting periods in this Part shall be construed accordingly.

### Textual Amendments

**F116** Words in s. 52 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 24](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### 53 Duration of licences, and renewal of licences for provision of services on assigned frequencies.

- (1) <sup>F117</sup>A licence to provide additional services on a frequency which is a relevant frequency for the purposes of section 48 or (in the case of a licence granted before the television transfer date) was assigned under section 65—
- (a) shall, subject to the provisions of this Part, continue in force for a period of ten years, and
  - (b) may (subject to the following provisions of this section) be renewed on one or more occasions for a period of ten years beginning with the date of renewal.
- (2) An application for the renewal of a licence under subsection (1) may be made by the licence holder not earlier than four years before the date on which it would otherwise cease to be in force and not later than <sup>F118</sup>[the day falling three months before] the relevant date.
- <sup>F119</sup>(3) .....
- (4) Where an application is made for the renewal of a licence under subsection (1) <sup>F120</sup>..., <sup>F121</sup>[OFCOM] may postpone the consideration of it by them for as long as they think appropriate having regard to subsection (9).
- (5) Where an application for the renewal of an additional services licence has been duly made to <sup>F121</sup>[OFCOM], they may only (subject to subsection (6)) refuse the application if—
- (a) they are not satisfied that any additional service specified in the technical plan submitted under section 50(3)(b) would, if the licence were renewed, be provided as proposed in that plan, or
  - (b) they propose to grant a fresh additional services licence for the provision of any additional service which would differ in any material respect from any such service authorised to be provided under the applicant’s licence, or
  - (c) they propose to determine that all or part of the spare capacity allocated by the licence is to cease to be available for the provision of additional services in order that it may be used by any relevant person for the purpose of enhancing the technical quality of his television broadcasting service;
- and in paragraph (c) “relevant person” means the person providing a television broadcasting service on whose frequency the licensed service has been provided.
- (6) Section 17(5) to (7) shall apply in relation to an applicant for the renewal of an additional services licence as those provisions apply in relation to such an applicant as is mentioned in section 17(5), but as if—
- (a) any reference to the awarding of a Channel 3 licence to the applicant were a reference to the renewal of the applicant’s licence under this section; and
  - (b) in section 17(7), the reference to section 19(1) were a reference to section 52(1).
- (7) On the grant of any such application <sup>F121</sup>[OFCOM] —
- (a) shall determine an amount which is to be payable to <sup>F121</sup>[OFCOM] by the licence holder in respect of the first complete calendar year falling within the period for which the licence is to be renewed; and
  - (b) may specify a different percentage from that specified under section 50(1)(d)
    - (ii) as the percentage of qualifying revenue for each accounting period of his

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- that will be payable by the applicant in pursuance of section 52(1)(c) during the period for which the licence is to be renewed;
- and [F121OFCOM] may specify under paragraph (b) either of the things mentioned in section 50(2).
- (8) The amount determined by [F121OFCOM] under subsection (7)(a) in connection with the renewal of a licence shall be such amount as would, in their opinion, be [F122the cash bid of the licence holder were the licence (instead of being renewed) to be granted for the period of the renewal on an application made in accordance with section 50(3).]
- [F123(8A) For the purposes of subsection (7)(b)—
- (a) different percentages may be specified for different accounting periods; and
  - (b) the percentages that may be specified for an accounting period include a nil percentage.]
- (9) Where [F121OFCOM] have granted a person’s application under this section they shall formally renew his licence not later than the relevant date or, if that is not reasonably practicable, as soon after that date as is reasonably practicable; and they shall not so renew his licence unless they have notified him of—
- (a) the amount determined by them under subsection (7)(a), and
  - (b) any percentage specified by them under subsection (7)(b),
- and he has, within such period as is specified in that notification, notified them that he consents to the licence being renewed on those terms.
- (10) Where an additional services licence is renewed under this section—
- (a) any conditions included in it in pursuance of section 52 shall have effect during the period for which the licence has been renewed—
    - (i) as if the amount determined by [F121OFCOM] under subsection (7)(a) above were an amount specified in a cash bid submitted by the licence holder, and
    - (ii) subject to any determination made under subsection (7)(b) above; and
  - (b) (subject to paragraph (a)) that section shall have effect in relation to the period for which the licence has been renewed as it has effect in relation to the period for which an additional services licence is originally in force.
- (11) In this section “the relevant date”, in relation to an additional services licence, means the date which [F121OFCOM] determine to be that by which they would need to publish a notice under section 50 if they were to grant, as from the date on which that licence would expire if not renewed, a fresh licence to provide the additional services formerly provided under that licence.
- [F124(12) A determination for the purposes of subsection (11)—
- (a) must be made at least one year before the date determined; and
  - (b) must be notified by OFCOM to the person who holds the licence in question.
- (13) In this section “the television transfer date” has the same meaning as in the Communications Act 2003.]

#### Textual Amendments

F117 Words in s. 53(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 25\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F118** Words in s. 53(2) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 25(3)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F119** S. 53(3) repealed (11.7.1997) by S.I. 1997/1682, reg. 2, **Sch. para.8**
- F120** Words in s. 53(4) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F121** Words in s. 53(4)-(11) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 25(4)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F122** Words in s. 53(8) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 25(5)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F123** S. 53(8A) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 25(6)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F124** S. 53(12)(13) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 25(7)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C31** S. 53(2) modified (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 18 para. 50(3)-(6)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- C32** S. 53(12) restricted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), para. 50(2)(a), (6), s. 411(2), **Sch. 18 para. 50(1)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**54 Additional services not to interfere with other transmissions.**

- (1) An additional services licence may include such conditions as [<sup>F125</sup>OFCOM] consider appropriate for securing that the provision of any additional service under the licence does not cause any interference with—
- (a) the television broadcasting service or services on whose frequency or frequencies it is provided, or
  - (b) any other wireless telegraphy transmissions.

<sup>F126</sup>(2) .....

**Textual Amendments**

- F125** Words in s. 54(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 26(2)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F126** S. 54(2) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 26(3), **Sch. 19(1)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**55 Enforcement of additional services licences.**

- (1) If [<sup>F127</sup>OFCOM] are satisfied that the holder of an additional services licence has failed to comply with any condition of the licence or with any direction given by [<sup>F127</sup>OFCOM] under or by virtue of any provision of this Part, they may (subject to subsection (3)) serve on him a notice requiring him to pay, within a specified period, a specified financial penalty to [<sup>F127</sup>OFCOM].
- <sup>F128</sup>(1A) The amount of a financial penalty imposed on a person in pursuance of subsection (1) shall not exceed 5 per cent. of the qualifying revenue for the licence holder’s last complete accounting period falling within the period for which his licence has been in force (“the relevant period”).



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (1B) In relation to a person whose first complete accounting period falling within the relevant period has not ended when the penalty is imposed, subsection (1A) is to be construed as referring to 5 per cent. of the amount which OFCOM estimate to be the qualifying revenue for that accounting period.
- (1C) Section 52(2) applies for determining or estimating qualifying revenue for the purposes of subsection (1A) or (1B) above.]
- (3) [<sup>F127</sup>OFCOM] shall not serve on any person a notice under subsection (1) unless they have given him a reasonable opportunity of making representations to them about the matters complained of.
- (4) Section 42 shall apply in relation to an additional services licence as it applies in relation to a licence to provide a Channel 3 service, but with the omission of subsection (7) [<sup>F129</sup>and, in the case of a licence renewed under section 53 as if the reference in section 42(4) to the end of the period for which the licence is to continue in force were a reference to the end of the period for which it has been renewed.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F127** Words in s. 55 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 27\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F128** S. 55(1A)-(1C) substituted for S. 55(2) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 13 para. 5](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F129** Words in s. 55(4) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 27\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

## CHAPTER VI

### TELEVISION BROADCASTING BY WELSH AUTHORITY

#### 56 Welsh Authority to continue in existence as Sianel Pedwar Cymru.

- (1) The authority which at the commencement of this section is called the Welsh Fourth Channel Authority shall continue in existence as a body corporate but—
- shall be known as Sianel Pedwar Cymru (or S4C); and
  - shall be constituted in accordance with <sup>F130</sup>... this Act;
- and in this Act references to the Welsh Authority are references to that authority.
- (2) The Welsh Authority shall consist of—
- a chairman appointed by the Secretary of State; and
  - such number of other members appointed by the Secretary of State, not being less than four nor more than eight, as he may from time to time determine.
- (3) Schedule 6 to this Act shall have effect with respect to the Welsh Authority.

#### Textual Amendments

- F130** Words in s. 56(1)(b) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## <sup>F131</sup>57 Function and duties of Welsh Authority.

.....

### Textual Amendments

**F131** S. 57 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), 206(8), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

## 58 Sources of programmes for S4C.

- (1) For the purpose of enabling the Welsh Authority to [<sup>F132</sup>fulfil so much of their public service remit in relation to S4C under paragraph 3 of Schedule 12 to the Communications Act 2003 as is contained in sub-paragraph (2)(a) and (b) of that paragraph] it shall be the duty of the BBC to provide the Authority (free of charge) with sufficient television programmes in Welsh to occupy not less than ten hours' transmission time per week, and to do so in a way which meets the reasonable requirements of the Authority.
- (2) It shall be the duty of the Channel Four Television Corporation—
  - (a) to provide the Welsh Authority with programme schedules for the programmes broadcast on Channel 4, including information as to the periods available for the broadcasting of advertisements, far enough in advance to enable the Welsh Authority to [<sup>F133</sup>fulfil so much of their public service remit in relation to S4C under paragraph 3 of Schedule 12 to the Communications Act 2003 as is contained in sub-paragraph (2)(c) of that paragraph]; and
  - (b) to provide the Welsh Authority (free of charge) with any programmes which are required by the Authority for the purpose of complying with that provision.
- (3) The programmes broadcast on S4C may, to the extent that they are not provided under subsection (1) or (2), be obtained by the Welsh Authority from such persons as they think fit.
- (4) Where any programmes provided under subsection (2) each form part of a series of programmes, the Welsh Authority shall ensure that the intervals between those programmes when broadcast on S4C normally correspond to the intervals between them when broadcast on Channel 4.
- (5) The Welsh Authority shall publish, in such manner as they consider appropriate, advance notice of the programme schedules for the programmes to be broadcast on S4C.

[<sup>F134</sup>(6) In this section “programme” does not include an advertisement.]

### Textual Amendments

**F132** Words in s. 58(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 28\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F133** Words in s. 58(2)(a) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 28\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F134** S. 58(6) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 28\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C33 S. 58(5) applied (1.10.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 29(2) (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, Sch. 1

**<sup>F135</sup>59 Requirements to be complied with in relation to S4C programmes.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

F135 S. 59 repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 19(1) Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**60 Advertising on S4C.**

<sup>F136</sup>(1) .....

<sup>F136</sup>(2) .....

<sup>F136</sup>(3) .....

(4) The Welsh Authority shall—

- (a) from time to time consult the Secretary of State as to the classes and descriptions of advertisements which must not be broadcast on S4C and the methods of advertising or sponsorship which must not be employed in, or in connection with, the provision of S4C; and
- (b) carry out any directions which he may give to them in respect of such matters.

(5) The Welsh Authority shall not act as an advertising agent.

<sup>F137</sup>(6) .....

**Textual Amendments**

F136 S. 60(1)-(3) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 19(1) Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

F137 S. 60(6) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 19(1) Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

C34 S. 60 applied (1.10.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 29(2) (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, Sch. 1

**[<sup>F138</sup>61 Funding of Welsh Authority.**

- (1) The Secretary of State shall, in the year 1998 and in each subsequent year, pay to the Welsh Authority the prescribed amount as increased by the appropriate percentage.
- (2) In this section “the prescribed amount” means the 1997 amount or such amount as may from time to time be prescribed under subsection (4).

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (3) In this section “the 1997 amount” means the amount paid by the Secretary of State to the Welsh Authority by way of interim payment for the year 1997 (under this section as originally enacted).
- (4) The Secretary of State may, if he is satisfied that it is appropriate to do so having regard to the cost to the Welsh Authority of
- [<sup>F139</sup>(a) providing services that are public services of the Authority (within the meaning of section 207 of the Communications Act 2003), and
- (b) arranging for the broadcasting or distribution of those services,
- by order] provide that the prescribed amount is to be an amount which is greater than the 1997 amount and is specified in the order.
- (5) Before making an order under subsection (4) the Secretary of State shall consult the Welsh Authority.
- (6) In this section “the appropriate percentage”, in relation to any year (“the relevant year”), means the percentage which corresponds to the percentage increase between—
- (a) the retail prices index for November 1996, and
- (b) the retail prices index for the month of November in the year preceding the relevant year;
- and for this purpose “the retail prices index” has the same meaning as in section 19(10).
- (7) Any sums required by the Secretary of State under this section shall be paid out of money provided by Parliament.
- (8) An order shall not be made under subsection (4) unless a draft of the order has been laid before and approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F138** S. 61 substituted (24.7.1996) by 1996 c. 55, ss. 80(1), 149(1)(c) (with s. 43(1)(6), 80(3))

**F139** Words in s. 61(4) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), ss. 207(7), 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C35** S. 61(3)(4) restricted (24.7.1996) by 1996 c. 55, ss. 80(4), 149(c)

### [<sup>F140</sup>61A Welsh Authority public service fund.

<sup>F141</sup>(1) .....

- (2) All amounts received by the Welsh Authority under section 61 <sup>F142</sup>... shall be kept by the Authority in a separate fund (in this section referred to as “the public service fund”) which may be applied only for the purposes of [<sup>F143</sup>their functions in relation to the provision of the services that are public services of the Authority (within the meaning of section 207 of the Communications Act 2003).]
- (3) No S4C company shall receive any direct or indirect subsidy from the public service fund.
- (4) The Welsh Authority shall secure that no television programme which has been wholly or partly financed out of the public service fund is included in a television programme service provided by an S4C company before it is first broadcast [<sup>F144</sup> on a

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

television programme service that is one of their public services (within the meaning of section 207 of the Communications Act 2003)].

F145(5) .....

F145(6)] .....

**Textual Amendments**

- F140** S. 61A inserted (1.10.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 81(1); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4 Sch. 1
- F141** S. 61A(1) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 19(1) Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F142** Words in s. 61A(2) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 19(1) Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F143** Words in s. 61A(2) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), ss. 207(8)(a), 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F144** Words in s. 61A(4) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), ss. 207(8)(b), 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F145** S. 61A(5)(6) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 19(1) Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

F146 **62 Information to be supplied to Commission by Welsh Authority.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F146** S. 62 repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 19(1) Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**63 Government control over S4C.**

- (1) If it appears to him to be necessary or expedient to do so in connection with his functions as such, the Secretary of State or any other Minister of the Crown may at any time by notice require the Welsh Authority to broadcast, at such times as may be specified in the notice, any announcement specified in the notice, with or without visual images of any picture, scene or object mentioned in the announcement; and it shall be the duty of the Authority to comply with the notice.
- (2) Where the Welsh Authority broadcast any announcement in pursuance of a notice under subsection (1), they may announce that they are doing so in pursuance of such a notice.
- (3) The Secretary of State may at any time by notice require the Welsh Authority to refrain from broadcasting any matter or classes of matter specified in the notice; and it shall be the duty of the Authority to comply with the notice.
- (4) Where the Secretary of State has given the Welsh Authority a notice under subsection (3), the Authority may broadcast an announcement of the giving of the notice or, when it has been revoked or has expired, of its revocation or expiration.
- (5) The powers conferred by this section are in addition to any power specifically conferred on the Secretary of State by any other provision of this Act.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**64 Audience research by Welsh Authority.**

- (1) The Welsh Authority shall make arrangements for ascertaining—
  - (a) the state of public opinion concerning programmes broadcast on S4C;
  - (b) any effects of such programmes on the attitudes or behaviour of persons who watch them; and
  - (c) the types of programme that members of the public would like to be broadcast on S4C.
- (2) Those arrangements shall—
  - (a) secure that, so far as is reasonably practicable, any research undertaken in pursuance of the arrangements is undertaken by persons who are neither members nor employees of the Welsh Authority; and
  - (b) include provision for full consideration by the Authority of the results of any such research.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**  
**C36** S. 64 applied (1.10.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 29(2) (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, Sch. 1

**CHAPTER VII**

SUPPLEMENTAL

<sup>F147</sup>**65 Assignment of frequencies by Secretary of State.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F147** S. 65 repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 19(1) Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**66 Requirements relating to transmission and distribution of services.**

- (1) During such period as the Secretary of State may by order specify, all Channel 3 services shall be broadcast [<sup>F148</sup>so as to be available for reception by members of the public] by a single person under arrangements made with him by the persons licensed to provide those services; and every Channel 3 licence shall include such conditions as appear to [<sup>F149</sup>OFCOM] to be appropriate—
  - (a) for securing that result and
  - (b) for securing that the costs incurred in respect of the broadcasting of those services (taken as a whole) during that period in accordance with those arrangements are shared by those persons in such manner as may be approved by the Secretary of State.
- (2) Any Channel 3 licence shall include such conditions as appear to [<sup>F149</sup>OFCOM] to be appropriate for securing that the costs incurred in respect of the distribution of Channel 3 services (taken as a whole) during such period as the Secretary of State may by order specify are shared by the persons licensed to provide those services in such manner as



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

may be approved by the Secretary of State. In this subsection “distribution”, in relation to Channel 3 services, means the conveyance of those services (by whatever means and whether directly or indirectly) to the broadcasting stations from which they are broadcast [<sup>F148</sup>so as to be available for reception by members of the public].

[<sup>F150</sup>(2A) In subsections (1) and (2) “available for reception by members of the public” shall be construed in accordance with section 361 of the Communications Act 2003]

- (3) The Secretary of State may, at any time during the period referred to in subsection (1) or (2), by order provide for that period to be extended by such further period as is specified in the order; and any conditions included in a Channel 3 licence in pursuance of that subsection shall accordingly, in any such case, have effect in relation to that period as so extended.
- (4) Any Channel 3 licence or licence to provide Channel 4 or 5 shall include such conditions as appear to [<sup>F149</sup>OFCOM] to be appropriate for requiring the signals carrying the licensed service to attain high standards in terms of technical quality and reliability throughout so much of the relevant area as is for the time being reasonably practicable.
- (5) Before imposing any conditions in pursuance of subsection (4) [<sup>F149</sup>OFCOM] shall consult the Secretary of State as to how much of the relevant area is to be specified in the conditions as the area throughout which the required standards are to be attained.
- (6) In subsections (4) and (5) “the relevant area”—
  - (a) in relation to a Channel 3 or Channel 5 licence, means the area for which the licensed service is to be provided; and
  - (b) in relation to the licence to provide Channel 4, means England, Scotland and Northern Ireland.
- (7) The Welsh Authority shall do all that they can to ensure that the signals carrying S4C attain high standards in terms of technical quality and reliability throughout so much of Wales as is for the time being reasonably practicable.
- (8) Any order under this section shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

#### Textual Amendments

- F148** Words in s. 66(1)(2) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 29\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F149** Words in s. 66 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 29\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F150** S. 66(2A) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 29\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### [<sup>F151</sup>66A Enforcement of licences held by BBC companies.

- (1) Where [<sup>F152</sup>OFCOM] —
  - (a) give a direction to a BBC company under section 40(1),
  - (b) serve a notice on a BBC company under any provision of section 41 or 42, or
  - (c) receive any written representations from a BBC company under section 40(2), 41(3) or 42(8),



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F152</sup>OFCOM] shall send a copy of the direction, notice or representations to the Secretary of State.

(2) References in subsection (1) to any of the provisions of sections 40 to 42 are references to that provision as applied—

- (a) by section 42B(2), in relation to a licence to provide a restricted service,
- <sup>F153</sup>(b) .....
- <sup>F154</sup>(c) .....
- <sup>F154</sup>(d) .....
- (e) by section 55(4), in relation to an additional services licence.]

**Textual Amendments**

- F151** S. 66A inserted (24.7.1996) by 1996 c. 55, ss. 136, 149(1)(f), **Sch. 8 para. 3**; (with s. 43(1)(6))
- F152** Words in s. 66A substituted (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21)**, s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 30** (with **Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F153** S. 66A(2)(b) omitted (11.7.1997) by S.I. 1997/1682, reg. 2, **Sch. para. 9(a)**
- F154** S. 66A(2)(c)(d) repealed (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21)**, s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with **Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**67 Computation of qualifying revenue.**

Part I of Schedule 7 (which contains provisions relating to the computation of qualifying revenue for the purposes of this Part and Part II) shall have effect.

<sup>F155</sup>**68 Certain receipts of Commission to be paid into Consolidated Fund.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F155** Ss. 68-70 repealed (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21)**, s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with **Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

<sup>F155</sup>**69 Frequency planning and research and development.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F155** Ss. 68-70 repealed (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21)**, s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with **Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

<sup>F155</sup>**70 Representation by Commission of Government and other interests in connection with broadcasting matters.**

.....

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Textual Amendments

**F155** Ss. 68-70 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

## 71 Interpretation of Part I.

(1) In this Part (unless the context otherwise requires)—

“the 1981 Act” means the <sup>M2</sup>Broadcasting Act 1981;

“additional service” and “additional services licence” have the meaning given by section 48(1) and section 49(10) respectively;

“the appropriate percentage”, in relation to any year, has the meaning given by section 19(10);

“cash bid”, in relation to a licence, has the meaning given by section 15(7);

“Channel 3” means the system of television broadcasting services established <sup>F156</sup>... under section 14, and “a Channel 3 licence” means a licence to provide one of the services comprised within that system;

“Channel 4” means the television broadcasting service referred to in section 24(1), and “on Channel 4” means in that service;

“Channel 5” means the television broadcasting service referred to in section 28(1), and “a Channel 5 licence” means a licence to provide that service;

<sup>F156</sup>  
...

“the Corporation” means the Channel Four Television Corporation established by section 23;

<sup>F157</sup>  
...

“licence” means a licence under this Part, and “licensed” shall be construed accordingly;

<sup>F156</sup>  
...

“national Channel 3 service” has the meaning given by section 14(6), and “a national Channel 3 licence” means a licence to provide a national Channel 3 service;

<sup>F157</sup>  
...

“regional Channel 3 service” has the meaning given by section 14(6), and “a regional Channel 3 licence” means a licence to provide a regional Channel 3 service;

[<sup>F158</sup>“restricted service” has the meaning given by section 42A;]

[<sup>F159</sup>“S4C” has the same meaning as in Part 3 of the Communications Act 2003;]

<sup>F156</sup>  
...

“spare capacity” shall be construed in accordance with section 48(2);

[<sup>F160</sup>“television broadcasting service”, “television licensable content service” and “television programme service” each has the same meaning as in Part 3 of the Communications Act 2003;]

(2) Where the person who is for the time being the holder of any licence (“the present licence holder”) is not the person to whom the licence was originally granted, any reference in this Part (however expressed) to the holder of the licence shall be

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

construed, in relation to any time falling before the date when the present licence holder became the holder of it, as including a reference to a person who was previously the holder of the licence.

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F156** Words in s. 71(1) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F157** Definitions in s. 71(1) omitted (11.7.1997) by S.I. 1997/1682, reg. 2, [Sch. para. 10\(a\)](#)
- F158** Definition in s. 71 inserted (1.4.1997) by 1996 c. 55, s. 148(1), [Sch. 10 Pt. II para. 17](#) (with s. 43(1) (6)); S.I. 1997/1005, [art. 4](#)
- F159** Words in s. 71 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 31\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F160** Words in s. 71 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 31\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### **Marginal Citations**

- M2** 1981 c. 68.

## <sup>F161</sup>**PART II**

### LOCAL DELIVERY SERVICES

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F161** [Pt. II](#) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### *Preliminary*

#### **72 Local delivery services.**

.....

#### *Licensing of local delivery services*

#### **73 Licensing of local delivery services.**

.....

#### **74 Applications for local delivery licences.**

.....

#### **75 Procedure to be followed by Commission in connection with consideration of applications for licences.**

.....

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**76 Award of licence to person submitting highest cash bid.**

.....

**76A Award of local delivery licence subject to conditions.**

.....

**77 Additional payments to be made in respect of local delivery licences.**

.....

**78 Duration and renewal of local delivery licences.**

.....

**78A Inclusion of certain services in local delivery service provided by digital means.**

.....

*Regulation of delivery of certain programmes*

**79 Regulation of delivery of programmes provided by licence holder and foreign satellite programmes.**

.....

**80 Directions requiring licence holder to cease relaying foreign television programmes.**

.....

*Enforcement of licences*

**81 Enforcement of local delivery licences.**

.....

*Prohibition on providing unlicensed local delivery services*

**82 Prohibition on providing local delivery services without a licence.**

.....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## PART III

### INDEPENDENT RADIO SERVICES

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C37** Pt. III: transfer of functions (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 1 para. 5](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

## CHAPTER I

### REGULATION BY AUTHORITY OF INDEPENDENT RADIO SERVICES GENERALLY

#### *Establishment of Radio Authority*

#### <sup>F162</sup>**83 The Radio Authority.**

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F162** [S. 83](#) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### *Function of Authority*

#### <sup>F163</sup>**84 Regulation by Authority of independent radio services.**

.....

#### Textual Amendments

**F163** [S. 84](#) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### **85 Licensing functions of Authority.**

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), [<sup>F164</sup>OFCOM] may, in accordance with the following provisions of this Part, grant [<sup>F165</sup> licences to provide relevant independent radio services].
- (2) [<sup>F164</sup>OFCOM] shall do all that they can to secure the provision within the United Kingdom of—
  - (a) a diversity of national services each catering for tastes and interests different from those catered for by the others and of which—
    - (i) one is a service the greater part of which consists in the broadcasting of spoken material, and

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (ii) another is a service which consists, wholly or mainly, in the broadcasting of music which, in the opinion of [<sup>F164</sup>OFCOM], is not pop music; and
  - (b) a range and diversity of local services.
- <sup>F166</sup>(3) . . . . .
- <sup>F166</sup>(4) . . . . .
- (5) The Secretary of State may by order make such amendments of subsection (2)(a) as he considers appropriate—
- (a) for including in that provision a requirement that one of the national services there referred to should be a service of a particular description, or
  - (b) for removing such a requirement from that provision;
- and (without prejudice to the generality of section 200(2)(b)) any such order may make such consequential amendments of section 98(1)(b)(iii) as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.
- (6) In subsection (2)(a)(ii) “pop music” includes rock music and other kinds of modern popular music which are characterised by a strong rhythmic element and a reliance on electronic amplification for their performance (whether or not, in the case of any particular piece of rock or other such music, the music in question enjoys a current popularity as measured by the number of recordings sold).
- (7) An order shall not be made under subsection (5) unless a draft of it has been laid before and approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament.
- [<sup>F167</sup>(8) In this section “relevant independent radio services” means the following services so far as they are services falling to be regulated under section 245 of the Communications Act 2003—
- (a) sound broadcasting services;
  - (b) radio licensable content services;
  - (c) additional radio services.]

**Textual Amendments**

- F164** Words in s. 85(1)(2) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 32\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))
- F165** Words in s. 85(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 32\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))
- F166** S. 85(3)(4) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 32\(4\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))
- F167** S. 85(8) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 32\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### *General provisions about licences*

#### **86 Licences under Part III.**

- (1) A licence shall be in writing and (subject to the provisions of this Part) shall continue in force [<sup>F168</sup>(subject to a suspension of the licence under section 111B)—
  - (a) in the case of a licence to provide radio licensable content services, until such time as it is surrendered or is revoked in accordance with any of the following provisions of this Part; and
  - (b) in any other case, until whichever is the earlier of any such time or the end of the period specified in the licence.]
- (2) A licence may be granted by [<sup>F169</sup>OFCOM] for the provision of such a service as is specified in the licence or for the provision of a service of such a description as is so specified; and (without prejudice to the generality of the preceding provision) a licence may be so granted for the provision of a service which to any extent consists in the simultaneous broadcasting of different programmes on different frequencies.
- [<sup>F170</sup>(3) A licence to provide a local or national service or to provide an additional service must specify a period of no more than twelve years as the period for which it is to be in force.]
- (4) [<sup>F169</sup>OFCOM] —
  - (a) shall not grant a licence to any person unless they are satisfied that he is a fit and proper person to hold it; and
  - (b) shall do all that they can to secure that, if they cease to be so satisfied in the case of any person holding a licence, that person does not remain the holder of the licence;

and nothing in this Part shall be construed as affecting the operation of this subsection or of section 88(1) or (2)(b) or (c) or 89(1).
- [<sup>F171</sup>(4A) Where [<sup>F169</sup>OFCOM] are not satisfied that a BBC company which has applied for a licence is a fit and proper person to hold it, they shall, before refusing the application, notify the Secretary of State that they are not so satisfied.]
- (5) [<sup>F169</sup>OFCOM] may vary a licence by a notice served on the licence holder if—
  - (a) in the case of a variation of the period for which the licence is to continue in force, the licence holder consents; or
  - (b) in the case of any other variation, the licence holder has been given a reasonable opportunity of making representations to [<sup>F169</sup>OFCOM] about the variation.
- (6) Paragraph (a) of subsection (5) does not affect the operation of section 110(1)(b); and that subsection shall not authorise the variation of any conditions included in a licence in pursuance of section 102(1) or section 118(1).
- (7) A licence granted to any person under this Part shall not be transferable to any other person without the previous consent in writing of [<sup>F169</sup>OFCOM] .
- (8) Without prejudice to the generality of subsection (7), [<sup>F169</sup>OFCOM] shall not give their consent for the purposes of that subsection unless they are satisfied that any such other person would be in a position to comply with all of the conditions included in the licence which would have effect during the period for which it is to be in force.



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- [<sup>F172</sup>(9) The holding of a licence by a person shall not relieve him of—
- (a) any liability in respect of a failure to hold a licence under section 1 of the Wireless Telegraphy Act 1949; or
  - (b) any obligation to comply with requirements imposed by or under Chapter 1 of Part 2 of the Communications Act 2003 (electronic communications networks and electronic communications services).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F168** Words in s. 86(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 252(1)**, 411(2) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), [art. 3\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))
- F169** Words in s. 86 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 33(2)** (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), [art. 3\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))
- F170** S. 86(3) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 252(2)**, 411(2) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), [art. 3\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))
- F171** S. 86(4A) inserted (24.7.1996) by [1996 c. 55](#), s. 136, 149(1)(f), **Sch. 8 para. 5** (with s. 43(1)(6))
- F172** S. 86(9) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 33(3)** (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), [art. 3\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

## 87 General licence conditions.

- (1) A licence may include—
- (a) such conditions as appear to [<sup>F173</sup>OFCOM] to be appropriate having regard to any duties which are or may be imposed on them, or on the licence holder, by or under this Act [<sup>F174</sup>, the Broadcasting Act 1996 or the Communications Act 2003];
  - (b) conditions enabling [<sup>F173</sup>OFCOM] to supervise and enforce technical standards in connection with the provision of the licensed service;
  - (c) conditions requiring the payment by the licence holder to [<sup>F173</sup>OFCOM] (whether on the grant of the licence or at such times thereafter as may be determined by or under the licence, or both) of a fee or fees of an amount or amounts so determined;
  - (d) conditions requiring the licence holder to furnish [<sup>F173</sup>OFCOM], in such manner and at such times as they may reasonably require, with such information as they may require for the purpose of exercising the functions assigned to them by or under this Act [<sup>F175</sup>, the Broadcasting Act 1996 or the Communications Act 2003];
  - (e) conditions requiring the licence holder, if found by [<sup>F173</sup>OFCOM] to be in breach of any condition of his licence, to reimburse to [<sup>F173</sup>OFCOM], in such circumstances as are specified in any conditions, any costs reasonably incurred by them in connection with the breach of that condition;
  - (f) conditions providing for such incidental and supplemental matters as appear to [<sup>F173</sup>OFCOM] to be appropriate.
- (2) A licence may in particular include—
- (a) conditions requiring the licence holder—
    - (i) to comply with any direction given by [<sup>F173</sup>OFCOM] as to such matters as are specified in the licence or are of a description so specified, or

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (ii) (except to the extent that [F173OFCOM] consent to his doing or not doing them) not to do or to do such things as are specified in the licence or are of a description so specified; and
- (b) conditions requiring the licence holder to permit—
- (i) any employee of, or person authorised by, [F173OFCOM], F176 ...
- F176(ii) . . . . .
- to enter any premises which are used in connection with the broadcasting of the licensed service and to inspect, examine, operate or test any equipment on the premises which is used in that connection.
- (3) The fees required to be paid to [F173OFCOM] by virtue of subsection (1)(c) shall be in accordance with such tariff as may from time to time be fixed by [F173OFCOM]; F177 ...
- (4) A tariff fixed under subsection (3) may specify different fees in relation to different cases or circumstances; and [F173OFCOM] shall publish every such tariff in such manner as they consider appropriate.
- (5) Where the holder of any licence—
- (a) is required by virtue of any condition imposed under this Part to provide [F173OFCOM] with any information, and
- (b) in purported compliance with that condition provides them with any information which is false in a material particular,
- he shall be taken for the purposes of sections 110 and 111 to have failed to comply with that condition.
- (6) Nothing in this Act which authorises or requires the inclusion in a licence of conditions relating to any particular matter or having effect for any particular purpose shall be taken as derogating from the generality of subsection (1).

#### Textual Amendments

- F173** Words in s. 87 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 34\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F174** Words in s. 87(1)(a) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 34\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F175** Words in s. 87(1)(d) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 34\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F176** S. 87(2)(b)(ii) and the word immediately preceding it repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 34\(4\)](#), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F177** Words in s. 87(3) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 34\(5\)](#), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

## 88 Restrictions on the holding of licences.

- (1) [F178OFCOM] shall do all that they can to secure—
- (a) that a person does not become or remain the holder of a licence if he is a person who is a disqualified person in relation to that licence by virtue of Part II of Schedule 2 to this Act; and



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) determine that any condition imposed by them in relation to any licence in pursuance of subsection (2)(c) has not been satisfied,  
 any provisions of this Part relating to the awarding of licences of the kind in question shall (subject to subsection (4)) have effect as if the person to whom the licence was awarded or granted had not made an application for it.
- (4) Those provisions shall not so have effect if [<sup>F178</sup>OFCOM] decide that it would be desirable to publish a fresh notice under this Part in respect of the grant of a licence, or (as the case may be) a further licence, to provide the service in question.
- (5) Every licence shall include such conditions as [<sup>F178</sup>OFCOM] consider necessary or expedient to ensure that where—
- (a) the holder of the licence is a body, and
  - (b) a relevant change takes place after the grant of the licence,
- [<sup>F178</sup>OFCOM] may revoke the licence by notice served on the holder of the licence and taking effect forthwith or on a date specified in the notice.
- [<sup>F182</sup>(6) The Commission shall not serve any such notice on the licence holder unless—
- (a) the Commission have notified him of the matters [<sup>F183</sup>constituting their grounds for revoking the licence] and given him a reasonable opportunity of making representations to them about those matters, and
  - (b) in a case where the relevant change is one falling within subsection (6A)—
    - (i) they have also given him an opportunity of complying with [<sup>F184</sup>the requirements imposed by or under Schedule 14 to the Communications Act 2003] within a period specified in the notification, and
    - (ii) the period specified in the notification has elapsed.
- (6A) A relevant change falls within this subsection if it consists only in one or more of the following—
- [<sup>F185</sup>(a) .....
  - (b) a change in the national market share (within the meaning of [<sup>F186</sup>Part 1 of Schedule 14 to the Communications Act 2003]) of one or more national newspapers (within the meaning of that Part of that Schedule);
  - (c) a change in the local market share (within the meaning of that Part of that Schedule) in a particular area of one or more local newspapers (within the meaning of that Part of that Schedule).
- [<sup>F187</sup>(6B)] .....
- [<sup>F188</sup>(6C) [<sup>F178</sup>OFCOM] shall not serve any such notice as is mentioned in subsection (5) on a BBC company unless they have given the Secretary of State notice of their intention to do so, specifying the relevant change.
- (6D) Where [<sup>F178</sup>OFCOM] receive any written representations from a BBC company under subsection (6), they shall send a copy of the representations to the Secretary of State.]
- (7) In this section “relevant change”, in relation to a body to which a licence has been awarded or granted, means—
- (a) any change affecting the nature or characteristics of the body, or
  - (b) any change in the persons having control over or interests in the body, [<sup>F189</sup>or

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) any other change giving rise to <sup>F190</sup>a disqualification under Part 2 of Schedule 2 to this Act or a contravention of a requirement imposed by or under Schedule 14 to the Communications Act 2003,]]  
being <sup>F191</sup>(in any case)] a change which is such that, if it fell to <sup>F178</sup>OFCOM] to determine whether to award the licence to the body in the new circumstances of the case, they would be induced by the change to refrain from so awarding it.

#### Textual Amendments

- F178** Words in s. 88 substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 35(2)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F179** S. 88(1)(b)(c) substituted for s. 88(1)(b) (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), **ss. 350(2), 411(2)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F180** S. 88(2)(da)(db) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 35(3)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F181** S. 88(2A) inserted (24.7.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 136, **Sch. 8 para. 6(2)** (with s. 43(1)(6))
- F182** S. 88: subsections (6)(6A)(6B) substituted for subsection (6) (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 73, **Sch. 2 Pt. V para. 13(2)**; S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, **Sch. 2**
- F183** Words in s. 88(6)(a) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 35(4)(a)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F184** Words in s. 88(6)(b)(i) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 35(4)(b)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F185** S. 88(6A)(a) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 35(5)(a), **Sch. 19(1)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F186** Words in s. 88(6A)(b) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 35(5)(b)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F187** S. 88(6B) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 35(6), **Sch. 19(1)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F188** S. 88(6C)(6D) inserted (24.7.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 136, **Sch. 8 para. 6(3)** (with s. 43(1)(6))
- F189** S. 88(7)(c) and the word “or” immediately preceding it inserted (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 73, **Sch. 2 Pt. V para. 13(3)(a)** (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, **Sch. 2**
- F190** Words in s. 88(7) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 35(7)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F191** Words in s. 88(7) substituted (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 73, **Sch. 2 Pt. V para. 13(3)(b)** (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, **Sch. 2**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C38** S. 88 modified (temp.) (17.7.2003) by The Communications Act 2003 (Commencement No. 1) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/1900), **art. 5**
- C39** S. 88(1) modified (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 143(3)(4)(6)(b) (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, **Sch. 2**
- C40** S. 88(1)(a) amended (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 145(7) (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, **Sch. 2**

#### 89 Disqualification for holding licence on grounds of conviction for transmitting offence.

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), a person shall be disqualified for holding a licence under this Part if within the last five years he has been convicted of—  
<sup>F192</sup>(a) an offence under section 1(1) of the Wireless Telegraphy Act 1949 (“the 1949 Act”) consisting in the establishment or use of a station for wireless

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

telegraphy, or the installation or use of wireless telegraphy apparatus, for the purpose of making a broadcast (within the meaning of section 9 of the Marine, &c., Broadcasting (Offences) Act 1967);

- (aa) an offence under section 1A of the 1949 Act (keeping wireless telegraphy station or apparatus available for unauthorised use) where the relevant contravention of section 1 would constitute an offence falling within paragraph (a);
- (ab) an offence under section 1B or 1C of the 1949 Act (unlawful broadcasting offences);]
- (b) an offence under the <sup>M3</sup>Marine, &c., Broadcasting (Offences) Act 1967; or
- (c) an offence under section 97 below.

<sup>F193</sup>(2) . . . . .

- (3) Every licence granted under this Part shall include conditions requiring the holder of the licence to do all that he can to ensure that no person who is disqualified for holding a licence by virtue of subsection (1) is [<sup>F194</sup>concerned in—
  - (a) the provision of the licensed service or the making of programmes included in it; or
  - (b) the operation of a station for wireless telegraphy used for broadcasting the service.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F192** S. 89(1)(a)-(ab) substituted for s. 89(1)(a) (29.12.2003) by *Communications Act 2003 (c. 21)*, s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 36(2)(4) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**F193** S. 89(2) repealed (29.12.2003) by *Communications Act 2003 (c. 21)*, s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**F194** Words in s. 89(3) substituted (29.12.2003) by *Communications Act 2003 (c. 21)*, s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 36(3)(4) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

---

**Marginal Citations**

**M3** 1967 c. 41.

*General provisions about licensed services*

<sup>F195</sup>**90** **General requirements as to licensed services.**

. . . . .

**Textual Amendments**

**F195** Ss. 90-96 repealed (29.12.2003) by *Communications Act 2003 (c. 21)*, s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

<sup>F195</sup>**91** **General code for programmes.**

. . . . .

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F195** Ss. 90-96 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F19592 General provisions as to advertisements.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F195** Ss. 90-96 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F19593 Control of advertisements.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F195** Ss. 90-96 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F19594 Government control over licensed services.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F195** Ss. 90-96 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F19595 Monitoring by Authority of programmes included in licensed services.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F195** Ss. 90-96 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F19596 Audience research.**

.....



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F195** Ss. 90-96 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

### *Prohibition on providing unlicensed independent radio services*

## 97 Prohibition on providing independent radio services without a licence.

(1) Subject to subsection (2), any person who provides any [<sup>F196</sup>relevant regulated radio service] without being authorised to do so by or under a licence under this Part [<sup>F197</sup>or Part II of the Broadcasting Act 1996] shall be guilty of an offence.

[<sup>F198</sup>(1A) In subsection (1) “relevant regulated radio service” means a service falling to be regulated by OFCOM under section 245 of the Communications Act 2003, other than a radio multiplex service.]

(2) The Secretary of State may, after consultation with [<sup>F199</sup>OFCOM], by order provide that subsection (1) shall not apply to such services or descriptions of services as are specified in the order.

(3) A person guilty of an offence under this section shall be liable—  
 (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum;  
 (b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine.

(4) No proceedings in respect of an offence under this section shall be instituted—  
 (a) in England and Wales, except by or with the consent of the Director of Public Prosecutions;  
 (b) in Northern Ireland, except by or with the consent of the Director of Public Prosecutions for Northern Ireland.

(5) Without prejudice to subsection (3) above, compliance with this section shall be enforceable by civil proceedings by the Crown for an injunction or interdict or for any other appropriate relief.

(6) Any order under this section shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

### Textual Amendments

**F196** Words in s. 97(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 37\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F197** Words in S. 97(1) inserted (1.10.1996) by [1996 c. 55](#), s. 148(1), [Sch. 10 Pt. I para. 7\(b\)](#) (with s. 43(1)(6)); [S.I. 1996/2120](#), art. 4, [Sch. 1](#)

**F198** S. 97(1A) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 37\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F199** Words in s. 97(2) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 37\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C41** S. 97(1) excluded by [S.I. 1990/2536](#), art. 2(1)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## CHAPTER II

### SOUND BROADCASTING SERVICES

#### *National services*

#### **98 Applications for national licences.**

- (1) Where [<sup>F200</sup>OFCOM] propose to grant a licence to provide a national service, they shall publish, in such manner as they consider appropriate, a notice—
- (a) stating that they propose to grant such a licence;
  - (b) specifying—
    - (i) the period for which the licence is to be granted,
    - (ii) the minimum area of the United Kingdom for which the service is to be provided,
    - [<sup>F201</sup>(iia) the digital capacity that is likely, in their opinion, to be available from the holders of national radio multiplex licences for the broadcasting of a simulcast radio service corresponding to the service;]
    - (iii) if the service is to be one falling within section 85(2)(a)(i) or (ii), that the service is to be such a service, and
    - (iv) if there is any existing licensed national service, that the service is to be one which caters for tastes and interests different from those already catered for by any such service (as described in the notice);
  - (c) inviting applications for the licence and specifying the closing date for such applications; and
  - (d) specifying—
    - (i) the fee payable on any application made in pursuance of the notice, and
    - (ii) the percentage of qualifying revenue for each accounting period that would be payable by an applicant in pursuance of section 102(1)(c) if he were granted the licence.
- (2) In determining the minimum area of the United Kingdom for which a national service is to be provided [<sup>F200</sup>OFCOM] shall have regard to the following considerations, namely—
- (a) that the service in question should, so far as is reasonably practicable, make the most effective use of the frequency or frequencies on which it is to be provided; but
  - (b) that the area for which it is to be provided should not be so extensive that the costs of providing it would be likely to affect the ability of the person providing the service to maintain it.
- (3) Any application made in pursuance of a notice under this section must be in writing and accompanied by—
- (a) the applicant's proposals for providing a service that would <sup>F202</sup>...—
    - (i) comply with any requirement specified in the notice under subsection (1)(b)(iii) or (iv), <sup>F203</sup>...
    - <sup>F203</sup>(ii) .....
  - [<sup>F204</sup>(aa) the applicant's proposals (if any) for providing a simulcast radio service corresponding to the service;]

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the fee specified in the notice under subsection (1)(d)(i);
- (c) the applicant's proposals for training or retraining persons employed or to be employed by him in order to help fit them for employment in, or in connection with, the making of programmes to be included in his proposed service;
- (d) the applicant's cash bid in respect of the licence;
- (e) such information as [F200OFCOM] may reasonably require—
  - (i) as to the applicant's present financial position and his projected financial position during the period for which the licence would be in force, and
  - (ii) as to the arrangements which the applicant proposes to make for, and in connection with, the transmission of his proposed service; and
- (f) such other information as [F200OFCOM] may reasonably require for the purpose of considering the application.

[F205(3A) For the purposes of subsection (1)(d)(ii)—

- (a) different percentages may be specified for different accounting periods; and
- (b) the percentages that may be specified for an accounting period include a nil percentage.]

(4) At any time after receiving such an application and before determining it [F200OFCOM] may require the applicant to furnish additional information under any of paragraphs (a), [F206(aa),] (c), (e) and (f) of subsection (3).

(5) Any information to be furnished to [F200OFCOM] under this section shall, if they so require, be in such form or verified in such manner as they may specify.

(6) [F200OFCOM] shall, as soon as reasonably practicable after the date specified in a notice under this section as the closing date for applications, publish in such manner as they consider appropriate—

- (a) the name of every person who has made an application to them in pursuance of the notice;
- (b) the proposals submitted by him under subsection (3)(a) [F207 and (aa)]; and
- (c) such other information connected with his application as [F200OFCOM] consider appropriate.

(7) In this section

[F208“national radio multiplex licence” has the same meaning as in Part 2 of the Broadcasting Act 1996; and]

“programme” does not include an advertisement.

(8) In this Part “cash bid”, in relation to a licence, means an offer to pay to [F200OFCOM] a specified amount of money in respect of the first complete calendar year falling within the period for which the licence is in force (being an amount which, as increased by the appropriate percentage, is also to be payable in respect of subsequent years falling wholly or partly within that period).

#### Textual Amendments

**F200** Words in s. 98 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 38\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F201** S. 98(1)(b)(iia) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 257\(2\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F202** Word in s. 98(3)(a) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 38(3)(a), **Sch. 19(1)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F203** S. 98(3)(a)(ii) and the word immediately preceding it repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 38(3)(b), **Sch. 19(1)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F204** S. 98(3)(aa) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), **ss. 257(3)**, 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F205** S. 98(3A) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 38(4)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F206** Word in s. 98(4) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 38(5)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F207** Words in s. 98(6)(b) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 38(6)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F208** Words in s. 98(7) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), **ss. 257(4)**, 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

## 99 Procedure to be followed by Authority in connection with consideration of applications for national licences.

- (1) Where a person has made an application for a national licence in accordance with section 98, [<sup>F209</sup>OFCOM] shall not proceed to consider whether to award him the licence on the basis of his cash bid in accordance with section 100 unless it appears to them—
  - (a) that his proposed service would <sup>F210</sup>...—
    - (i) comply with any requirement specified under subsection (1)(b)(iii) or (iv) of section 98, <sup>F211</sup>...
    - <sup>F211</sup>(ii) .....
  - (b) that he would be able to maintain that service [<sup>F212</sup>and any proposed simulcast radio service corresponding to that service] throughout the period for which the licence would be in force.
- (2) Any reference to an applicant in section 100 (except in section 100(9)(b)) is accordingly a reference to an applicant in whose case it appears to [<sup>F209</sup>OFCOM] that the requirements of subsection (1)(a) and (b) above are satisfied.

### Textual Amendments

- F209** Words in s. 99 substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 39(2)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F210** Word in s. 99(1)(a) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 39(3)(a), **Sch. 19(1)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F211** S. 99(1)(a)(ii) and the word immediately preceding it repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 39(3)(b), **Sch. 19(1)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F212** Words in s. 99(1)(b) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 39(4)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## **100 Award of national licence to person submitting highest cash bid.**

(1) Subject to the following provisions of this section, [<sup>F213</sup>OFCOM] shall, after considering all the cash bids submitted by the applicants for a national licence, award the licence to the applicant who submitted the highest bid.

[<sup>F214</sup>(1A) If, in a case in which one or more of the applicants has made a proposal to provide a simulcast radio service corresponding to the service to be licensed (a “simulcast applicant”), the highest cash bid is made by an applicant who is not a simulcast applicant, OFCOM may—

- (a) disregard the requirement imposed by subsection (1); and
- (b) award the licence to the simulcast applicant whose cash bid is the highest of the bids submitted by simulcast applicants.

(2) Where—

- (a) two or more applicants for a licence have submitted cash bids specifying an identical amount and that amount is higher than the amount of every other bid, or
- (b) two or more simulcast applicants have submitted cash bids specifying an identical amount and that amount is higher than the amount of every other bid submitted by a simulcast applicant,

OFCOM must invite those applicants and (in a case falling within paragraph (b)) every applicant who has made a higher bid to submit further cash bids in respect of that licence.

(2A) OFCOM may decide not to invite an applicant to submit a further cash bid under subsection (2) if—

- (a) the applicant is not a simulcast applicant and they propose to exercise their power under subsection (1A); or
- (b) they propose to exercise their power under subsection (3).

(2B) Subsection (2A) is not to be construed as preventing OFCOM from making a decision to exercise their power under subsection (1A) or (3) after they have received further bids in response to invitations under subsection (2).

(2C) In this Part references to a person’s cash bid, in relation to a person who has submitted a further cash bid in pursuance of subsection (2), have effect as references to his further bid.]

(3) [<sup>F213</sup>OFCOM] may disregard the requirement imposed by subsection (1) and award the licence to an applicant who has not submitted the highest bid if it appears to them that there are exceptional circumstances which make it appropriate for them to award the licence to that applicant; and where it appears to [<sup>F213</sup>OFCOM], in the context of the licence, that any circumstances are to be regarded as exceptional circumstances for the purposes of this subsection, those circumstances may be so regarded by them despite the fact that similar circumstances have been so regarded by them in the context of any other licence or licences.

(4) If it appears to [<sup>F213</sup>OFCOM], in the case of the applicant to whom (apart from this subsection) they would award the licence in accordance with the preceding provisions of this section, that there are grounds for suspecting that any relevant source of funds is such that it would not be in the public interest for the licence to be awarded to him—

- (a) they shall refer his application to the Secretary of State, together with—
  - (i) a copy of all documents submitted to them by the applicant, and

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (ii) a summary of their deliberations on the application; and
  - (b) they shall not award the licence to him unless the Secretary of State has given his approval.
- (5) On such a reference the Secretary of State may only refuse to give his approval to the licence being awarded to the applicant in question if he is satisfied that any relevant source of funds is such that it would not be in the public interest for the licence to be so awarded.
- (6) In subsections (4) and (5) “relevant source of funds”, in relation to an applicant, means any source of funds to which he might (directly or indirectly) have recourse for the purpose of—
  - (a) paying any amounts payable by him by virtue of section 102(1), or
  - (b) otherwise financing the provision of his proposed service.
- (7) Where [F<sup>213</sup>OFCOM] are, by virtue of subsection (4), precluded from awarding the licence to an applicant, the preceding provisions of this section shall (subject to subsection (11)) have effect as if that person had not made an application for the licence.
- (8) Where [F<sup>213</sup>OFCOM] have awarded a national licence to any person in accordance with this section, they shall, as soon as reasonably practicable after awarding the licence—
  - (a) publish the matters specified in subsection (9) in such manner as they consider appropriate; and
  - (b) grant the licence to that person.
- (9) The matters referred to in subsection (8)(a) are—
  - (a) the name of the person to whom the licence has been awarded and the amount of his cash bid;
  - (b) the name of every other applicant in whose case it appeared to [F<sup>213</sup>OFCOM] that the requirement specified in section 99(1)(a) was satisfied;
  - (c) where the licence has, by virtue of subsection (3) above, been awarded to an applicant who has not submitted the highest cash bid, [F<sup>213</sup>OFCOM]’s reasons for the licence having been so awarded; and
  - (d) such other information as [F<sup>213</sup>OFCOM] consider appropriate.
- (10) In a case where the licence has been awarded to any person by virtue of the operation of this section, in accordance with any provision of this Part, on the revocation of an earlier grant of the licence, subsection (9) shall have effect as if—
  - (a) paragraph (b) were omitted; and
  - (b) the matters specified in that subsection included an indication of the circumstances in which the licence has been awarded to that person.
- (11) Subsections (1) to (6) shall not have effect as mentioned in subsection (7) if [F<sup>213</sup>OFCOM] decide that it would be desirable to publish a fresh notice under section 98 in respect of the grant of the licence; and similarly, where any of the following provisions of this Part provides, in connection with the revocation of a licence, for this section to have effect as if the former holder of the licence had not made an application for it, this section shall not so have effect if [F<sup>213</sup>OFCOM] decide that it would be desirable to publish a fresh notice under this Part in respect of the grant of a further licence to provide the service in question.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

- F213** Words in s. 100 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 40](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F214** S. 100(1A)-(2C) substituted for s. 100(2) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 257\(5\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

### [<sup>F215</sup>100A] Licence conditions relating to simulcast radio services

Where OFCOM award a national licence to a person whose application for that licence included proposals to provide a simulcast radio service, that licence must include a condition requiring the licence holder—

- (a) to provide, from a date specified in the licence, a simulcast radio service corresponding to the licensed service; and
- (b) to do all that he can to secure the broadcasting of that service.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F215** [S. 100A](#) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 257\(6\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

### 101 Failure to begin providing licensed service and financial penalties on revocation of licence.

- (1) If at any time after a national licence has been granted to any person but before the licence has come into force—
  - (a) that person indicates to [<sup>F216</sup>OFCOM] that he does not intend to provide [<sup>F217</sup>the licensed national service or that he does not intend to provide a corresponding simulcast radio service that he is required to provide by a condition imposed under section 100A], or
  - (b) [<sup>F216</sup>OFCOM] for any other reason have reasonable grounds for believing that that person will not provide [<sup>F218</sup>the licensed national service or any such simulcast radio service] once the licence has come into force,
 then, subject to subsection (2)—
  - (i) [<sup>F216</sup>OFCOM] shall serve on him a notice revoking the licence as from the time the notice is served on him, and
    - (ii) section 100 shall (subject to section 100(11)) have effect as if he had not made an application for the licence.
- (2) Subsection (1) shall not apply in the case of any person by virtue of paragraph (b) of that subsection unless [<sup>F216</sup>OFCOM] have served on him a notice stating their grounds for believing that he will not provide [<sup>F219</sup>the licensed national service or the simulcast radio service] once his licence has come into force; and they shall not serve such a notice on him unless they have given him a reasonable opportunity of making representations to them about the matters complained of.
- (3) Where [<sup>F216</sup>OFCOM] revoke a national licence under this section or under any other provision of this Part, they shall serve on the licence holder a notice requiring him to pay to them, within a specified period, [<sup>F220</sup>a specified financial penalty].



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- [<sup>F221</sup>(3A) The maximum amount which a person may be required to pay by way of a penalty under subsection (3) is the maximum penalty given by subsections (3B) and (3C).
- (3B) In a case where the licence is revoked under this section or the penalty is imposed before the end of the first complete accounting period of the licence holder to fall within the period for which the licence is in force, the maximum penalty is whichever is the greater of—
- (a) £250,000; and
  - (b) 7 per cent. of the amount which OFCOM estimate would have been the qualifying revenue for the first complete accounting period of the licence holder falling within the period for which the licence would have been in force.
- (3C) In any other case, the maximum penalty is whichever is the greater of—
- (a) £250,000; and
  - (b) 7 per cent. of the qualifying revenue for the last complete accounting period of the licence holder falling within the period for which the licence is in force.
- (3D) Section 102(2) to (6) applies for estimating or determining qualifying revenue for the purposes of subsection (3B) or (3C) above.]
- (5) Any financial penalty payable by any body by virtue of subsection (3) shall, in addition to being recoverable from that body as provided by section 122(4), be recoverable by [<sup>F216</sup>OFCOM] as a debt due to them from any person who controls that body.

#### Textual Amendments

- F216** Words in s. 101 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 41\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F217** Words in s. 101(1)(a) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 41\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F218** Words in s. 101(1)(b) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 41\(3\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F219** Words in s. 101(2) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 41\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F220** Words in s. 101(3) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 13 para. 6\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F221** S. 101(3A)-(3D) substituted for s. 101(4) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 13 para. 6\(2\)\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C42** S. 101(3) modified (1.11.1996) by [1996 c. 55, s. 145\(6\)\(b\)](#) (with [s. 43\(1\)\(6\)](#)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, [Sch. 2](#)
- C43** S. 101(3B)(a): power to amend conferred (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 13 para. 9](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- C44** S. 101(3C)(a): power to amend conferred (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 13 para. 9](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

## 102 Additional payments to be made in respect of national licences.

- (1) A national licence shall include conditions requiring the licence holder to pay to [<sup>F222</sup>OFCOM] (in addition to any fees required to be so paid by virtue of section 87(1)(c))—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) in respect of the first complete calendar year falling within the period for which the licence is in force, the amount specified in his cash bid;
  - (b) in respect of each subsequent year falling wholly or partly within that period, the amount so specified as increased by the appropriate percentage; and
  - (c) in respect of each accounting period of his falling within the period referred to in paragraph (a), an amount representing such percentage of the qualifying revenue for that accounting period as was specified in relation to the licence under section 98(1)(d)(ii).
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1)(c) the qualifying revenue for any accounting period of the licence holder shall (subject to subsection (6)) consist of all payments received or to be received by him or by any connected person—
- (a) in consideration of the inclusion in the licensed service in that period of advertisements or other programmes, or
  - (b) in respect of charges made in that period for the reception of programmes included in that service.
- (3) If, in connection with the inclusion of any advertisements or other programmes whose inclusion is paid for by payments falling within subsection (2), any payments are made to the licence holder or any connected person to meet any payments payable by the licence holder by virtue of subsection (1)(c), those payments shall be regarded as made in consideration of the inclusion of the programmes in question.
- (4) In the case of an advertisement included under arrangements made between—
- (a) the licence holder or any connected person, and
  - (b) a person acting as an advertising agent,
- the amount of any receipt by the licence holder or any connected person that represents a payment by the advertiser from which the advertising agent has deducted any amount by way of commission shall, except in a case falling within subsection (5), be the amount of the payment by the advertiser after the deduction of the commission.
- (5) If the amount deducted by way of commission as mentioned in subsection (4) exceeds 15 per cent. of the payment by the advertiser, the amount of the receipt in question shall be taken to be the amount of the payment less 15 per cent.
- (6) If, in any accounting period of the licence holder, the licence holder or any connected person derives, in relation to any programme to be included in the licensed service, any financial benefit (whether direct or indirect) from payments made by any person, by way of sponsorship, for the purpose of defraying or contributing towards costs incurred or to be incurred in connection with that programme, the qualifying revenue for that accounting period shall be taken for the purposes of subsection (1)(c) to include the amount of the financial benefit so derived by the licence holder or the connected person, as the case may be.
- (7) A national licence may include conditions—
- (a) enabling [<sup>F222</sup>OFCOM] to estimate before the beginning of an accounting period the amount due for that period by virtue of subsection (1)(c); and
  - (b) requiring the licence holder to pay the estimated amount by monthly instalments throughout that period.
- (8) Such a licence may in particular include conditions—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) authorising [F<sup>222</sup>OFCOM] to revise any estimate on one or more occasions, and to adjust the instalments payable by the licence holder to take account of the revised estimate;
  - (b) providing for the adjustment of any overpayment or underpayment.
- (9) Where—
- (a) the first complete accounting period of the licence holder falling within the period referred to in subsection (1)(a) (“the licence period”) does not begin at the same time as that period, or
  - (b) the last complete accounting period of his falling within the licence period does not end at the same time as that period,
- any reference in subsection (1)(c) to an accounting period of his shall include a reference to such part of the accounting period preceding that first complete accounting period, or (as the case may be) following that last complete accounting period, as falls within the licence period; and other references to accounting periods in this Part shall be construed accordingly.
- (10) In this Part “the appropriate percentage”, in relation to any year (“the relevant year”), means the percentage which corresponds to the percentage increase between—
- (a) the retail prices index for the month of November in the year preceding the first complete calendar year falling within the period for which the licence in question is in force; and
  - (b) the retail prices index for the month of November in the year preceding the relevant year;
- and for this purpose “the retail prices index” means the general index of prices (for all items) published by the Central Statistical Office of the Chancellor of the Exchequer.

#### Textual Amendments

**F222** Words in s. 102 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 42](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

### 103 Restriction on changes in control over holder of national licence.

- (1) Where—
- (a) any change in the persons having control over—
    - (i) a body to which a national licence has been awarded or transferred in accordance with this Part of this Act, or
    - (ii) an associated programme provider,takes place within the relevant period, and
  - (b) that change takes place without having been previously approved for the purposes of this section by [F<sup>223</sup>OFCOM],
- then (subject to subsection (5)) [F<sup>223</sup>OFCOM] may, if the licence has not yet been granted, refuse to grant it to the body referred to in paragraph (a)(i) above or, if it has already been granted, serve on that body a notice revoking it.
- (2) In subsection (1)—
- “associated programme provider”, in relation to such a body as is mentioned in paragraph (a)(i) of that subsection, means any body which is connected with that body and [F<sup>224</sup> is or is likely to be involved, to a substantial

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

extent, in the provision of the programmes included] in the licensed service;  
 and

“the relevant period”, in relation to a national licence, means the period beginning with the date of the award of the licence and ending on the first anniversary of the date of its coming into force;

and paragraph 3 in Part I of Schedule 2 to this Act shall have effect for the purposes of this subsection [F225as it has effect for the purposes of that Schedule.]

- (3) [F223OFCOM] shall refuse to approve for the purposes of this section such a change as is mentioned in subsection (1)(a) if it appears to them that the change would be prejudicial to the provision under the licence, by the body referred to in subsection (1)(a)(i), of a service which accords with the proposals submitted under section 98(3)(a) by that body (or, as the case may be, by the person to whom the licence was originally awarded).
- (4) [F223OFCOM] may refuse so to approve any such change if, in any circumstances not falling within subsection (3), they consider it appropriate to do so.
- (5) [F223OFCOM] shall not under subsection (1) refuse to grant a licence to, or serve a notice on, any body unless they have given it a reasonable opportunity of making representations to them about the matters complained of.
- (6) Where under subsection (1) [F223OFCOM] refuse to grant a licence to any body, section 100 shall (subject to section 100(11)) have effect as if that body had not made an application for the licence; and, where under that subsection they serve on any body a notice revoking its licence, subsections (6) and (7) of section 111 shall apply in relation to that notice as they apply in relation to a notice served under subsection (3) of that section.

#### Textual Amendments

**F223** Words in s. 103 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 43\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F224** Words in s. 103(2) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 43\(3\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F225** Words in s. 103(2) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 43\(3\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C45** S. 103 applied (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 18 para. 44\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### [F226]103A Renewal of national licences.

- (1) A national licence may (subject to the following provisions of this section) be renewed on one occasion for a period of [F227twelve] years beginning with the date of renewal.
- (2) An application for the renewal of a national licence under subsection (1) may be made by the licence holder not earlier than three years before the date on which it would otherwise cease to be in force and not later than [F228the day falling three months before] the relevant date.
- (3) Where any such application is made F229 ...—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- <sup>F230</sup>(a) .....
- (b) <sup>F231</sup> ..., [<sup>F232</sup>OFCOM] may postpone the consideration of the application for so long as they think appropriate having regard to subsection (8).
- (4) Where an application for the renewal of a national licence has been duly made to [<sup>F232</sup>OFCOM], they shall (subject to subsection (5)) grant the application if, but only if—
- (a) [<sup>F232</sup>OFCOM] are satisfied that the applicant would, if his licence were renewed, provide a national service which complied with the conditions included in the licence in pursuance of section 106 (whether as originally imposed or as varied under that section),
- <sup>F233</sup>(b) the applicant gave notice to OFCOM, within the period of one month beginning with the commencement of section 42 of the Broadcasting Act 1996, of his intention to provide a simulcast radio service, and]
- (c) a simulcast radio service provided by the applicant is being broadcast in digital form or [<sup>F232</sup>OFCOM] are satisfied that by the relevant date the applicant has done all that it would in the circumstances be reasonable to expect him to do by that date to procure the broadcasting of such a service within such time as [<sup>F232</sup>OFCOM] consider reasonable.
- (5) Section 100(4) to (6) shall apply in relation to an applicant for the renewal of a national licence as those provisions apply in relation to such an applicant as is mentioned in section 100(4), but as if any reference to the awarding of such a licence to the applicant were a reference to the renewal of the applicant's licence under this section.
- (6) On the grant of any application under this section [<sup>F232</sup>OFCOM] —
- (a) may, in a case where a simulcast radio service provided by the applicant is not yet being broadcast in digital form on the relevant date, determine a date by which the broadcasting of such a service in that form must begin;
- (b) shall determine an amount which is to be payable to [<sup>F232</sup>OFCOM] by the applicant in respect of the first complete calendar year falling within the period for which the licence is to be renewed; and
- (c) may specify a different percentage from that specified under section 98(1)(d) (i) as the percentage of qualifying revenue for each accounting period of his that will be payable by the applicant in pursuance of section 102(1)(c) during the period for which the licence is to be renewed.
- <sup>F234</sup>(7) The amount determined under subsection (6)(b) must be equal to the amount which, in OFCOM's opinion, would have been the cash bid of the licence holder were the licence (instead of being renewed) to be granted for the period of the renewal on an application made in accordance with section 98.
- (7A) For the purposes of subsection (6)(c)—
- (a) different percentages may be specified for different accounting periods; and
- (b) the percentages that may be specified for an accounting period include a nil percentage.]
- (8) Where [<sup>F232</sup>OFCOM] have granted a person's application under this section they shall formally renew his licence not later than the relevant date or, if that is not reasonably practicable <sup>F235</sup> ..., as soon after that date as is reasonably practicable; and they shall not so renew his licence unless they have notified him of—
- (a) any date determined by them under subsection (6)(a),
- (b) the amount determined by them under subsection (6)(b), and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

(c) any percentage specified by them under subsection (6)(c),  
and he has, within such period as is specified in that notification, notified them that he consents to the licence being renewed on those terms.

(9) Where a national licence has been renewed under this section—

- (a) any conditions included in it in pursuance of section 102 shall have effect during the period for which the licence has been renewed—
  - (i) as if the amount determined by [F232OFCOM] under subsection (6)(b) were an amount specified in a cash bid submitted by the licence holder, and
  - (ii) subject to any determination made under subsection (6)(c);
- (b) (subject to paragraph (a)) that section shall have effect in relation to the period for which the licence has been renewed as it has effect in relation to the period for which a national licence is originally in force;
- (c) where [F232OFCOM] have determined a date under subsection (6)(a), they shall include in the licence as renewed a condition requiring a simulcast radio service to be broadcast in digital form throughout the period beginning with the date determined under subsection (6)(a) and ending with the date on which the licence (as renewed) is to expire; and
- (d) the reference in section 111(4) to the end of the period for which a national licence is to continue in force shall, in relation to the licence, be construed as a reference to the end of the period for which it has been renewed.

F236(10) .....

[ In the case of a pre-transfer national licence (including one for a period extended under F237(10A) section 253 of the Communications Act 2003)—

- (a) the licence is not to be capable of being renewed under this section if it has already been renewed under this section before the radio transfer date; and
- (b) on the renewal of the licence, it shall be the duty of OFCOM to secure that the renewed licence contains only such provision as would be included in a national licence granted by OFCOM under this Part after the radio transfer date.]

(11) In this section—

F238  
...

“the relevant date”, in relation to a national licence, means the date which [F232OFCOM] determine to be that by which they would need to publish a notice under section 98(1) if they were to grant, as from the date on which that licence would expire if not renewed, a fresh licence to provide the national service formerly provided under that licence.]

[F239(12) A determination for the purposes of subsection (11)—

- (a) must be made at least one year before the date determined; and
- (b) must be notified by OFCOM to the person who holds the licence in question.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F226** S. 103A inserted (24.7.1996) by 1996 c. 55, ss. 92, 149(e) (with s. 43(1)(6))

**F227** Word in s. 103A(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 44(3) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- F228** Words in s. 103A(2) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 44(4)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F229** Words in s. 103A(3) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F230** S. 103A(3)(a) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 44(5), **Sch. 19(1)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F231** Words in s. 103A(3)(b) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 44(5), **Sch. 19(1)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F232** Words in s. 103A substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 44(2)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F233** S. 103A(4)(b) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 44(6)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F234** S. 103A(7)(7A) substituted for s. 103A(7) (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 44(7)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F235** Words in s. 103A(8) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F236** S. 103A(10) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F237** S. 103A(10A) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 44(8)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F238** Words in s. 103A(11) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F239** S. 103A(12) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 44(9)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C46** S. 103A(2) modified (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 18 para. 50(3)-(6)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- C47** S. 103A(12) restricted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 18 para. 50(1),(2)(b),(6)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

*Local and other services*

**104 Applications for other licences.**

- (1) Where [<sup>F240</sup>OFCOM] propose to grant a licence to provide a local service, they shall publish, in such manner as they consider appropriate, a notice—
- stating that they propose to grant such a licence;
  - specifying the area or locality in the United Kingdom for which the service is to be provided;
  - inviting applications for the licence and specifying the closing date for applications; and
  - stating the fee payable on any application made in pursuance of the notice.
- (2) Any application made in pursuance of a notice under subsection (1) must be in writing and accompanied by—
- the fee specified in the notice under paragraph (d) of that subsection;
  - the applicant's proposals for providing a service that would—
    - cater for the tastes and interests of persons living in the area or locality for which it would be provided or for any particular tastes and interests of such persons, and



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (ii) broaden the range of programmes available by way of local services to persons living in that area or locality;
  - (c) such information as [F240OFCOM] may reasonably require—
    - (i) as to the applicant’s present financial position and his projected financial position during the period for which the licence would be in force, and
    - (ii) as to the arrangements which the applicant proposes to make for, and in connection with, the transmission of his proposed service; and
  - (d) such other information as [F240OFCOM] may reasonably require for the purpose of considering the application.
- (3) At any time after receiving such an application and before determining it [F240OFCOM] may require the applicant to furnish additional information under subsection (2)(b), (c) or (d).
- (4) [F240OFCOM] shall, at the request of any person and on the payment by him of such sum (if any) as [F240OFCOM] may reasonably require, make available for inspection by that person any information furnished under subsection (2)(b) by the applicants for a local licence.
- <sup>F241</sup>(5) .....
- (6) [F242An application for a licence to provide a restricted service shall be made] in such manner as [F240OFCOM] may determine, and shall be accompanied by such fee (if any) as [F240OFCOM] may determine.
- (7) In this section and sections 105 and 106 “programme” does not include an advertisement.

#### Textual Amendments

**F240** Words in s. 104 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 45\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F241** S. 104(5)(6)(a) repealed (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, ss. 94(2), 148(2), [Sch. 11 Pt. I](#) (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, [Sch. 2](#)

**F242** Words in s. 104(6) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 45\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### [F243]104A Renewal of local licences.

- (1) A local licence may (subject to the following provisions of this section) be renewed on one occasion for a period of [F244twelve] years beginning with the date of renewal.
- (2) No application for the renewal of a local licence under subsection (1) may be made before [F245OFCOM] first publish a notice pursuant to section 50(2) of the Broadcasting Act 1996 inviting applications for a licence to provide a relevant local radio multiplex service.
- (3) Subject to subsection (2), an application for the renewal of a local licence under subsection (1) may be made by the licence holder not earlier than three years before the date on which it would otherwise cease to be in force and not later than [F246the day falling three months before] the relevant date.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (4) The applicant must, in his application or at any time before the consideration of his application, nominate—
- (a) a local digital sound programme service provided or to be provided by him, and
  - (b) a relevant local radio multiplex service,
- but may not nominate together a local digital sound programme service and a local radio multiplex service if another local licence held by him includes a condition in pursuance of subsection (12) relating to the broadcasting of that local digital sound programme service by that local radio multiplex service.
- (5) Where an application for the renewal of a local licence has been duly made to [F245OFCOM], they shall grant the application if—
- (a) they are satisfied that the applicant would, if his licence were renewed, provide a local service which complied with the conditions included in the licence in pursuance of section 106 (whether as originally imposed or as varied under that section),<sup>F247</sup> ...
  - (b) the nominated local digital sound programme service provided by the applicant is being broadcast by means of the nominated local radio multiplex service.
  - [<sup>F248</sup>(c) they are satisfied that the period for which the nominated local digital sound programme service will be available for reception and the times at which it will be available will not be significantly different, week by week, from those for which and at which the licensed local service will be broadcast;]
- (6) Where the condition specified in subsection (5)(a) is satisfied, [F245OFCOM] may grant the application even though the condition specified in subsection (5)(b) is not satisfied if—
- (a) the applicant holds a licence to provide local digital sound programme services,
  - (b) a licence to provide the nominated local radio multiplex service has been awarded, and
  - (c) it appears to [F245OFCOM] that, under a contract between the applicant and the person to whom that licence has been awarded, the applicant is obliged to provide the nominated local digital sound programme service for broadcasting by means of the nominated local radio multiplex service.
- (7) [F245OFCOM] may in any case postpone consideration of the application until the relevant date.
- (8) If, at the relevant date, the condition specified in subsection (5)(b) is not satisfied, and any of the conditions specified in subsection (6) is not satisfied, [F245OFCOM] may postpone consideration of the application for such period not exceeding twelve months as they think appropriate.
- (9) Where [F245OFCOM] postpone consideration of an application under this section for any period beyond the relevant date (the “postponement period”), they shall extend the period for which the licence is in force by a period equal to the postponement period; and section 86(3) shall not limit the powers of [F245OFCOM] under this subsection.
- (10) On the grant of any application under this section [F245OFCOM] shall—
- (a) where the nominated local digital sound programme service provided by the applicant is not being broadcast by means of the nominated local radio

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

multiplex service, determine a date by which that service must have begun to be so broadcast; and

(b) specify a fee payable to [F<sup>245</sup>OFCOM] in respect of the renewal.

(11) Where [F<sup>245</sup>OFCOM] have granted a person’s application under this section they shall formally renew his licence as soon afterwards as is reasonably practicable; and they shall not so renew his licence unless they have notified him of—

(a) any date determined by them under subsection (10)(a), and

(b) the renewal fee specified by them under subsection (10)(b),

and he has, within such period as is specified in that notification, notified them that he consents to the licence being renewed on those terms.

(12) Where [F<sup>245</sup>OFCOM] renew a licence under this section they shall include in the licence as renewed a condition requiring the licence holder to do all that he can to ensure that the nominated local digital sound programme service is broadcast by means of the nominated local radio multiplex service throughout the period beginning with whichever is the later of—

(a) the date on which the licence would expire if not renewed, and

(b) any date determined by them under subsection (10)(a),

and ending with the date on which the licence (as renewed) is to expire.

[ In the case of a pre-transfer local licence (including one for a period extended under F<sup>249</sup>(12A) section 253 of the Communications Act 2003)—

(a) the licence is not to be capable of being renewed under this section if it has already been renewed under this section before the radio transfer date; and

(b) on the renewal of the licence, it shall be the duty of OFCOM to secure that the renewed licence contains only such provision as would be included in a local licence granted by OFCOM under this Part after the radio transfer date.]

(13) In this section—

(a) “local digital sound programme service” has the same meaning as in Part II of the Broadcasting Act 1996;

(b) “nominated” means nominated by the applicant under subsection (4);

(c) “relevant date”, in relation to a local licence, means the date which [F<sup>245</sup>OFCOM] determine to be that by which they would need to publish a notice under section 104(1) if they were to grant, as from the date on which that licence would expire if not renewed, a fresh licence to provide the local service formerly provided under that licence; and

(d) “relevant local radio multiplex service”, in relation to a local licence, means a local radio multiplex service (within the meaning of Part II of the Broadcasting Act 1996) with a coverage area which to a significant extent includes the coverage area of the local service provided under the local licence; and for this purpose “coverage area”, in relation to a service, has the meaning given by [F<sup>250</sup>paragraph 8(2) of Schedule 14 to the Communications Act 2003].]

[F<sup>251</sup>(14) A determination for the purposes of subsection (13)(c)—

(a) must be made at least one year before the date determined; and

(b) must be notified by OFCOM to the person who holds the licence in question.]

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

- F243** Ss. 104A, 104B inserted (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 94(1) (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, Sch. 2
- F244** Word in s. 104A(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 46(3) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F245** Words in s. 104A substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 46(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F246** Words in s. 104A(3) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 46(4) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F247** Word in s. 104A(5)(a) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 19(1) Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F248** S. 104A(5)(c) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), ss. 254, 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F249** S. 104A(12A) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 46(5) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F250** Words in s. 104A(13)(d) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 46(6) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F251** S. 104A(14) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 46(7) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C48** S. 104A(3) modified (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 18 para. 50(3)–(6) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- C49** S. 104A(14) restricted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2) Sch. 18 para. 50(1), (2)(c), (6) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

## 104B <sup>F252</sup> Special application procedure for local licences.

(1) Where—

(a) a local licence is due to expire (otherwise than by virtue of section 110),  
[<sup>F253</sup>and]

<sup>F254</sup>(b) .....

(c) [<sup>F255</sup>OFCOM] propose to grant a further licence to provide the service in question,

[<sup>F255</sup>OFCOM] may if they think fit publish a notice under subsection (2) instead of a notice under section 104(1).

[<sup>F256</sup>(1A) In subsection (1)(c) the reference to the service in question, in relation to a case in which it is a pre-transfer local licence that is due to expire, is a reference to the equivalent local service for which a licence is capable of being granted at times on or after the radio transfer date.]

(2) A notice under this subsection is a notice—

(a) stating that [<sup>F255</sup>OFCOM] propose to grant a further licence to provide a specified local service,

(b) specifying the area or locality in the United Kingdom for which the service is to be provided,

(c) inviting declarations of intent to apply for a licence to provide the service,

(d) specifying the closing date for such declarations, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (e) specifying—
  - (i) the application fee payable on any declaration made in pursuance of the notice, and
  - (ii) a deposit of such amount as [<sup>F255</sup>OFCOM] may think fit.
- (3) A declaration of intent made in pursuance of a notice under subsection (2) must be in writing and accompanied by the application fee and deposit specified under subsection (2)(e)(i) and (ii).
- (4) Where [<sup>F255</sup>OFCOM] receive a declaration of intent in accordance with the provisions of this section from a person other than the licence holder in relation to the service in question, they shall—
  - (a) publish a notice under section 104(1),
  - (b) specify—
    - (i) in relation to persons who have made a declaration of intent in accordance with the provisions of this section, no further application fee, and
    - (ii) in relation to all other applicants, an application fee of the same amount as the fee referred to in subsection (2)(e)(i), and
  - (c) repay the deposit referred to in subsection (2)(e)(ii) to every person—
    - (i) who has made a declaration of intent in accordance with the provisions of this section, and
    - (ii) who duly submits an application in pursuance of the notice referred to in paragraph (a).
- (5) Where [<sup>F255</sup>OFCOM] receive a declaration of intent in accordance with the provisions of this section from the licence holder in relation to the service in question, and no such declaration from any other person, they shall—
  - (a) invite the licence holder to apply for the licence in such manner as they may determine (but without requiring any further application fee), and
  - (b) on receiving an application duly made by him, repay to him the deposit referred to in subsection (2)(e)(ii).

<sup>F257</sup>(6) .....

<sup>F257</sup>(7) .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F252** S. 104A, 104B inserted (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 94(1) (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5. Sch. 2
- F253** Word in s. 104B(1)(a) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), ss. 255(a), 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F254** S. 104B(1)(b) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), ss. 255(b), 411(2), Sch. 19(1) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F255** Words in s. 104B substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 47(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F256** S. 104B(1A) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 47(3) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F257** S. 104B(6)(7) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 19(1) Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## 105 Special requirements relating to grant of local licences.

Where [<sup>F258</sup>OFCOM] have published a notice under section 104(1), they shall, in determining whether, or to whom, to grant the local licence in question, have regard to the following matters, namely—

- (a) the ability of each of the applicants for the licence to maintain, throughout the period for which the licence would be in force, the service which he proposes to provide;
- (b) the extent to which any such proposed service would cater for the tastes and interests of persons living in the area or locality for which the service would be provided, and, where it is proposed to cater for any particular tastes and interests of such persons, the extent to which the service would cater for those tastes and interests;
- (c) the extent to which any such proposed service would broaden the range of programmes available by way of local services to persons living in the area or locality for which it would be provided, and, in particular, the extent to which the service would cater for tastes and interests different from those already catered for by local services provided for that area or locality; and
- [<sup>F259</sup>(d) the extent to which there is evidence that, amongst persons living in that area or locality, there is a demand for, or support for, the provision of the proposed service.]

### Textual Amendments

**F258** Words in s. 105 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 48\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

**F259** S. 105(d) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 48\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

### *Miscellaneous provisions relating to national and local services*

## 106 Requirements as to character and coverage of national and local services.

- (1) A national or local licence shall include such conditions as appear to [<sup>F260</sup>OFCOM] to be appropriate for securing that the character of the licensed service, as proposed by the licence holder when making his application, is maintained during the period for which the licence is in force<sup>F261</sup> ....
- [<sup>F262</sup>(1A) Conditions included in a licence for the purposes of subsection (1) may provide that OFCOM may consent to a departure from the character of the licensed service if, and only if, they are satisfied—
  - (a) that the departure would not substantially alter the character of the service;
  - (b) that the departure would not narrow the range of programmes available by way of relevant independent radio services to persons living in the area or locality for which the service is licensed to be provided;
  - (c) that, in the case of a local licence, the departure would be conducive to the maintenance or promotion of fair and effective competition in that area or locality; or
  - (d) that, in the case of a local licence, there is evidence that, amongst persons living in that area or locality, there is a significant demand for, or significant support for, the change that would result from the departure.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (1B) The matters to which OFCOM must have regard in determining for the purposes of this section the character of a service provided under a local licence include, in particular, the selection of spoken material and music in programmes included in the service.]
- (2) A national or local licence shall include conditions requiring the licence holder to secure that the licensed service serves so much of the area or locality for which it is licensed to be provided as is for the time being reasonably practicable.
- (3) A national licence shall include conditions enabling [F260 OFCOM], where it appears to them to be reasonably practicable for the licensed service to be provided for any additional area falling outside the minimum area determined by them in accordance with section 98(2), to require the licence holder to provide the licensed service for any such additional area.
- (4) Subject to subsection (5), [F260 OFCOM] may, if they think fit, authorise the holder of a local licence, by means of a variation of his licence to that effect, to provide the licensed service for any additional area or locality adjoining the area or locality for which that service has previously been licensed to be provided.
- [F263(5) OFCOM shall only exercise the power conferred on them by subsection (4) if it appears to them—
- (a) that to do so would not result in a significant increase of the area or locality for which the service in question is licensed to be provided; or
  - (b) that the increase that would result is justifiable in the exceptional circumstances of the case.]

(6) As soon as practicable after [F264 OFCOM] have exercised that power in relation to any service, they shall publish, in such manner as they consider appropriate, a notice—

    - (a) stating that they have exercised that power in relation to that service; and
    - (b) giving details of the additional area or locality for which that service is licensed to be provided.

[F265(7) In this section “relevant independent radio services” means the following services so far as they are services falling to be regulated under section 245 of the Communications Act 2003—

    - (a) sound broadcasting services;
    - (b) radio licensable content services;
    - (c) additional services;

but, in relation to a departure from the character of a service provided under a local licence, does not include a service that is provided otherwise than wholly or mainly for reception by persons living and working in the area or locality in question.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F260** Words in s. 106(1)–(4) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 49](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

**F261** Words in s. 106(1) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 312\(2\), 411\(2\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

**F262** S. 106(1A)(1B) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 312\(3\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

**F263** S. 106(5) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 312\(4\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))



---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- F264** Words in s. 106(6) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 49](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F265** S. 106(7) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 312\(5\)](#), 411(2) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

[<sup>F266</sup>**106ZA** **Consultation about change of character of local services**

- (1) Before deciding for the purposes of a condition imposed under subsection (1A) of section 106 whether to consent to a departure from the character of a service provided under a local licence on any of the grounds mentioned in paragraphs (b) to (d) of that subsection, OFCOM must publish a notice specifying—
  - (a) the proposed departure; and
  - (b) the period in which representations may be made to OFCOM about the proposal.
- (2) That period must end not less than 28 days after the date of publication of the notice.
- (3) The notice must be published in such manner as appears to OFCOM to be appropriate for bringing it to the attention of the persons who, in OFCOM's opinion, are likely to be affected by the departure.
- (4) OFCOM—
  - (a) are not required to publish a notice under this section, and
  - (b) may specify a period of less than 28 days in such a notice as the period for representations,if they consider that the publication of the notice, or allowing a longer period for representations, would result in a delay that would be likely prejudicially to affect the interests of the licence holder.
- (5) OFCOM are not required under this section—
  - (a) to publish any matter that is confidential in accordance with subsection (6) or (7); or
  - (b) to publish anything that it would not be reasonably practicable to publish without disclosing such a matter.
- (6) A matter is confidential under this subsection if—
  - (a) it relates specifically to the affairs of a particular body; and
  - (b) its publication would or might, in OFCOM's opinion, seriously and prejudicially affect the interests of that body.
- (7) A matter is confidential under this subsection if—
  - (a) it relates specifically to the private affairs of an individual; and
  - (b) its publication would or might, in OFCOM's opinion, seriously and prejudicially affect the interests of that individual.]

---

**Textual Amendments**

- F266** S. 106ZA inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 313](#), 411(2) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

**F267 106A Variation of local licence following change of control.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F267** Ss. 106A-108 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#)  
 Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F267 107 Party political broadcasts.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F267** Ss. 106A-108 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#)  
 Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F267 108 Promotion of equal opportunities in relation to employment by holder of national licence.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F267** Ss. 106A-108 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#)  
 Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

*Enforcement of licences*

**109 Power to require scripts etc. or broadcasting of correction or [F268 a statement of findings].**

- (1) If [F269 OFCOM] are satisfied that the holder of a licence granted under this Chapter has failed to comply with any condition of the licence or with any direction given by [F269 OFCOM] under or by virtue of any provision of this Part, they may serve on him a notice—
- (a) stating that [F269 OFCOM] are so satisfied as respects any specified condition or direction;
  - (b) stating the effect of subsection (2); and
  - (c) specifying for the purposes of that subsection a period not exceeding twelve months.
- (2) If, at any time during the period specified in a notice under subsection (1), [F269 OFCOM] are satisfied that the licence holder has again failed to comply with any such condition or direction as is mentioned in that subsection (whether or not the same as the one specified in the notice), [F269 OFCOM] may direct him—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) to provide [F269OFCOM] in advance with such scripts and particulars of the programmes to be included in the licensed service as are specified in the direction; and
- (b) in relation to such of those programmes as will consist of or include recorded matter, to produce to [F269OFCOM] in advance for examination or reproduction such recordings of that matter as are so specified;
- and a direction under this subsection shall have effect for such period, not exceeding six months, as is specified in the direction.
- (3) If [F269OFCOM] are satisfied—
- (a) that the holder of a licence has failed to comply with any condition of the licence, and
- (b) that that failure can be appropriately remedied by the inclusion in the licensed service of a correction or [F268a statement of findings] (or both) under this subsection,
- they may (subject to subsection (4)) direct the licence holder to include in the licensed service a correction or [F268a statement of findings] (or both) in such form, and at such time or times, as they may determine.
- (4) [F269OFCOM] shall not give any person a direction under subsection (3) unless they have given him a reasonable opportunity of making representations to [F269OFCOM] about the matters complained of.
- (5) Where the holder of a licence includes a correction or [F268a statement of findings] in the licensed service in pursuance of a direction under subsection (3), he may announce that he is doing so in pursuance of such a direction.
- [F270(6) For the purposes of this section a statement of findings, in relation to a case in which OFCOM are satisfied that the holder of a licence has contravened the conditions of his licence, is a statement of OFCOM's findings in relation to that contravention.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F268** Words in s. 109 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 344\(2\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F269** Words in ss. 109-111A substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 50](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F270** S. 109(6) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 344\(3\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C50** S. 109 applied (with modifications) (1.10.1996) by [1996 c. 55, ss. 62\(10\), 66\(10\)](#) (with [s. 43\(1\)\(6\)](#)); [S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, Sch. 2](#)
- C51** Ss. 109-111A applied (with modifications) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 250\(3\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

## 110 Power to impose financial penalty or suspend or shorten licence period.

- (1) If [F269OFCOM] are satisfied that the holder of a licence granted under this Chapter has failed to comply with any condition of the licence or with any direction given by them under or by virtue of any provision of this Part, they may (subject to the following provisions of this section) serve on him—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) a notice requiring him to pay, within a specified period, a specified financial penalty to [<sup>F269</sup>OFCOM];
  - (b) a notice reducing the period for which the licence is to be in force by a specified period not exceeding two years; or
  - (c) a notice suspending the licence for a specified period not exceeding six months.
- [<sup>F271</sup>(1A) The maximum amount which the holder of a national licence may be required to pay by way of a financial penalty imposed in pursuance of subsection (1)(a) is the maximum penalty given by subsection (1B).
- (1B) The maximum penalty is whichever is the greater of—
- (a) £250,000; and
  - (b) 5 per cent. of the qualifying revenue for his last complete accounting period falling within the period for which his licence has been in force (“the relevant period”).
- (1C) In relation to a person whose first complete accounting period falling within the relevant period has not ended when the penalty is imposed, subsection (1B)(b) is to be construed as referring to 5 per cent. of the amount which OFCOM estimate to be the qualifying revenue for that accounting period.
- (1D) Section 102(2) to (6) applies for determining or estimating qualifying revenue for the purposes of subsection (1B) or (1C) above.]
- (3) The amount of any financial penalty imposed in pursuance of subsection (1)(a) on the holder of any other licence shall not exceed [<sup>F272</sup>£250,000].
- (4) [<sup>F269</sup>OFCOM] shall not serve on any person such a notice as is mentioned in subsection (1)(a), (b) or (c) unless they have given him a reasonable opportunity of making representations to them about the matters complained of.
- (5) Where a licence is due to expire on a particular date by virtue of a notice served on any person under subsection (1)(b), [<sup>F269</sup>OFCOM] may, on the application of that person, revoke that notice by a further notice served on him at any time before that date, if they are satisfied that, since the date of the earlier notice, his conduct in relation to the operation of the licensed service has been such as to justify the revocation of that notice.
- (6) It is hereby declared that any exercise by [<sup>F269</sup>OFCOM] of their powers under subsection (1) of this section in respect of any failure to comply with any condition or direction shall not preclude any exercise by them of their powers under section 109 in respect of that failure.

[<sup>F273</sup>(7) .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F269** Words in ss. 109-111A substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 50](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F271** S. 110(1A)-(1D) substituted for s. 110(2) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 13 para. 7\(1\)\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F272** Words in s. 110(3) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 13 para. 7\(2\)\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F273** S. 110(7) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C51** Ss. 109-111A applied (with modifications) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 250\(3\)](#), 411(2) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**C52** S. 110(1B)(a): power to amend conferred (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 13 para. 9](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**C53** S. 110(3): power to amend conferred (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 13 para. 9](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**111 Power to revoke licences.**

- (1) If [<sup>F269</sup>OFCOM] are satisfied—
  - (a) that the holder of a licence granted under this Chapter is failing to comply with any condition of the licence or with any direction given by them under or by virtue of any provision of this Part, and
  - (b) that that failure is such that, if not remedied, it would justify the revocation of the licence,they shall (subject to subsection (8)) serve on the holder of the licence a notice under subsection (2).
- (2) A notice under this subsection is a notice—
  - (a) stating that [<sup>F269</sup>OFCOM] are satisfied as mentioned in subsection (1);
  - (b) specifying the respects in which, in their opinion, the licence holder is failing to comply with any such condition or direction as is there mentioned; and
  - (c) stating that, unless the licence holder takes, within such period as is specified in the notice, such steps to remedy the failure as are so specified, [<sup>F269</sup>OFCOM] will revoke his licence under subsection (3).
- (3) If at the end of the period specified in a notice under subsection (2) [<sup>F269</sup>OFCOM] are satisfied—
  - (a) that the person on whom the notice was served has failed to take the steps specified in it, and
  - (b) that it is necessary in the public interest to revoke his licence,they shall (subject to subsection (8)) serve on him a notice revoking his licence.
- (4) If [<sup>F269</sup>OFCOM] are satisfied in the case of any national licence—
  - (a) that the holder of the licence has ceased to provide the licensed service before the end of the period for which the licence is to continue in force, and
  - (b) that it is appropriate for them to do so,they shall (subject to subsection (8)) serve on him a notice revoking his licence.
- (5) If [<sup>F269</sup>OFCOM] are satisfied—
  - (a) that the holder of a licence granted under this Chapter provided them, in connection with his application for the licence, with information which was false in a material particular, or
  - (b) that, in connection with his application for the licence, the holder of such a licence withheld any material information with the intention of causing them to be misled,they may (subject to subsection (8)) serve on him a notice revoking his licence.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) Subject to subsection (7), any notice served under subsection (3), (4) or (5) shall take effect as from the time when it is served on the licence holder.
- (7) If it appears to [F<sup>269</sup>OFCOM] to be appropriate to do so for the purpose of preserving continuity in the provision of the service in question, they may provide in any such notice for it to take effect as from a date specified in it.
- (8) [F<sup>269</sup>OFCOM] shall not serve any notice on a person under this section unless they have given him a reasonable opportunity of making representations to them about the matters complained of.

#### Textual Amendments

**F269** Words in ss. 109-111A substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 50](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C51** Ss. 109-111A applied (with modifications) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 250\(3\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**C54** S. 111 modified (1.10.1996) by [1996 c. 55, s. 43\(5\)](#) (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, [Sch. 1](#)  
 S. 111 applied (with modifications) (1.10.1996) by [1996 c. 55, ss. 62\(10\), 66\(10\)](#) (with s. 43(1)(6));  
[S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, Sch. 2](#)

S. 111 applied (with modifications) (1.10.1996) by [1996 c. 55, s. 59\(8\)\(9\)](#) (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, [Sch. 2](#)

S. 111 modified (1.10.1996) by [1996 c. 55, s. 66\(12\)](#) (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, [Sch. 2](#)

#### [F<sup>274</sup>111A] Enforcement of licences held by BBC companies.

Where [F<sup>269</sup>OFCOM] —

- (a) serve a notice on a BBC company under any provision of section 109, 110 or 111, or
- (b) receive any written representations from a BBC company under section 109(4), 110(4) or 111(8),

[F<sup>269</sup>OFCOM] shall send a copy of the direction, notice or representations to the Secretary of State.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F269** Words in ss. 109-111A substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 50](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F274** S. 111A inserted (24.7.1996) by [1996 c. 55, s. 136, 149\(1\)\(f\), Sch. 8 para. 7](#) (with s. 43(1)(6))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C51** Ss. 109-111A applied (with modifications) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 250\(3\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### [F<sup>275</sup>111B] Power to suspend licence to provide satellite service.

- (1) If [F<sup>276</sup>OFCOM] are satisfied—



*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) that the holder of a licence to provide a [F277 radio licensable content service] has included in the service one or more programmes containing material likely to encourage or incite to crime or to lead to disorder,
  - (b) that he has thereby failed to comply with the condition [F278] which in compliance with section 263 of the Communications Act 2003 is included in the licence for the purpose of securing the objective mentioned in section 319(2)(b) of that Act, and]
  - (c) that the failure is such as to justify the revocation of the licence,
- they shall serve on the holder of the licence a notice under subsection (2).
- (2) A notice under this subsection is a notice—
    - (a) stating that [F276 OFCOM] are satisfied as mentioned in subsection (1),
    - (b) specifying the respects in which, in their opinion, the licence holder has failed to comply with the condition mentioned in paragraph (b) of that subsection,
    - (c) stating that [F276 OFCOM] may revoke his licence after the end of the period of twenty-one days beginning with the date on which the notice is served on the licence holder,
    - (d) informing the licence holder of his right to make representations to [F276 OFCOM] within that period about the matters complained of, and
    - (e) suspending the licence as from the time when the notice is served on the licence holder until the revocation takes effect or [F276 OFCOM] decide not to revoke the licence.
  - (3) If [F276 OFCOM], having considered any representations about the matters complained of made to them within the period referred to in subsection (2)(c) by the licence holder, are satisfied that it is necessary in the public interest to revoke the licence in question, they shall serve on the licence holder a notice revoking the licence.
  - (4) A notice under subsection (3) shall not take effect until the end of the period of twenty-eight days beginning with the day on which that notice was served on the licence holder.
  - (5) Section 111 shall not have effect in relation to the revocation of a licence in pursuance of a notice under subsection (1).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F275** S. 111B inserted (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 96 (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, Sch. 2
- F276** Words in s. 111B substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 51(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F277** Words in s. 111B(1)(a) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 51(3)(a) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F278** Words in s. 111B(1)(b) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 51(3)(b) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C55** S. 111B applied (with modifications) (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 18 para. 45 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## CHAPTER III

### LICENSABLE SOUND PROGRAMME SERVICES

#### <sup>F279</sup> 112 Licensable sound programme services.

.....

##### Textual Amendments

**F279** S. 112 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### <sup>F280</sup> 113 Licensing etc. of licensable sound programme services.

.....

##### Textual Amendments

**F280** S. 113 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

## CHAPTER IV

### ADDITIONAL SERVICES PROVIDED ON SOUND BROADCASTING FREQUENCIES

#### 114 Additional services.

- (1) In this Part “additional service” means any service which consists in the sending of [<sup>F281</sup>electronic] signals for transmission by wireless telegraphy by means of the use of the spare capacity within the signals carrying any sound broadcasting service provided—[<sup>F282</sup>on a relevant frequency].
  - (2) For the purposes of this Part the spare capacity within the signals carrying any such broadcasting service shall be taken to be [<sup>F283</sup>any part of the signals which—
    - (a) is not required for the purposes of the sound broadcasting service for the purposes of which the frequency has been made available; and
    - (b) is determined by OFCOM to be available for the provision of additional services;]
 and references in this Part to spare capacity shall be construed accordingly.
- [<sup>F284</sup>(2A) At any time while an additional services licence is in force, OFCOM may, if they consider it appropriate to do so, modify or further modify the determination made for the purposes of that licence under subsection (2)(b); and where there has been such a modification or further modification, the licence shall have effect accordingly.
- (2B) A modification or further modification under subsection (2A) must not reduce the amount of spare capacity made available for the licensed services.]

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (3) [F285OFCOM shall, when determining under subsection (2)] the extent and nature of the spare capacity available for the provision of additional services in the case of any frequency on which a national service is provided, have regard to any need of the person providing that service to be able to use part of the signals carrying it for providing services which are ancillary to programmes included in the service.
- (4) A person holding a national licence shall be taken for the purposes of this Part to be authorised by his licence to provide any such services as are mentioned in subsection (3).
- F286(5) . . . . .
- [F287(6) In this section “electronic signal” means a signal within the meaning of section 32 of the Communications Act 2003.
- (7) In this section and section 115 “relevant frequency” means a frequency made available by OFCOM for the purposes of a sound broadcasting service.]

**Textual Amendments**

- F281** Word in s. 114(1) substituted (25.7.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 52(2)(a)** (with Sch. 17 para. 52(7), Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/1900, art. 2(1), Sch. 1
- F282** Words in s114(1) substituted for s. 14(1)(a)(b) (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 52(2)(b)** (with Sch. 17 para. 52(7), Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F283** S. 114(2)(a)(b) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 52(3)** (with Sch. 17 para. 52(7), Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F284** S. 114(2A)(2B) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 52(4)** (with Sch. 17 para. 52(7), Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F285** Words in s. 114(3) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 52(5)** (with Sch. 17 para. 52(7), Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F286** S. 114(5) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F287** S. 114(6)(7) substituted for s. 114(6) (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 52(6)** (with Sch. 17 para. 52(7), Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**115 Licensing of additional services.**

- (1) [F288OFCOM] shall do all that they can to secure that, in the case of each [F289 relevant frequency], all of the spare capacity available for the provision of additional services on that frequency is used for the provision of such services under additional services licences granted by [F288OFCOM] in accordance with this section.
- (2) An additional services licence may relate to the use of spare capacity within more than one frequency; and two or more additional services licences may relate to the use of spare capacity within the same frequency where it is to be used at different times, or in different areas, in the case of each of those licences.
- (3) An additional services licence may include provisions enabling the licence holder, subject to and in accordance with such conditions as [F288OFCOM] may impose, to authorise any person to whom this subsection applies to provide any additional service on the spare capacity allocated by the licence.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (4) Subsection (3) applies to any person who is not a disqualified person in relation to an additional services licence by virtue of Part II of Schedule 2 to this Act [F290] and who would not be in contravention of the requirements imposed by or under Schedule 14 to the Communications Act 2003 if he held such a licence].
- (5) Any conditions included in an additional services licence shall apply in relation to the provision of additional services by a person authorised as mentioned in subsection (3) as they apply in relation to the provision of such services by the licence holder; and any failure by such a person to comply with any such conditions shall be treated for the purposes of this Part as a failure on the part of the licence holder to comply with those conditions.
- (6) Every licence to provide a national service shall include such conditions as appear to [F288] OFCOM] to be appropriate for securing that the licence holder grants—
- (a) to any person who holds a licence to provide additional services on the frequency on which that national service is provided, and
  - (b) to any person who is authorised by any such person as mentioned in subsection (3) to provide additional services on that frequency,
- access to facilities reasonably required by that person for the purposes of, or in connection with, the provision of any such additional services.
- (7) Any person who grants to any other person access to facilities in accordance with conditions imposed under subsection (6) may require that other person to pay a reasonable charge in respect thereof; and any dispute as to the amount of any such charge shall be determined by [F288] OFCOM].
- (8) The holder of a licence to provide a [F291] local or restricted service or to provide a radio licensable content service] shall be taken for the purposes of this Part to be authorised by his licence to provide, or to authorise another person to provide, additional services on the frequency on which the licensed service is provided.
- (9) In this Part “additional services licence” means a licence to provide additional services.

#### Textual Amendments

- F288** Words in s. 115 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 53\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F289** Words in s. 115(1) substituted for s. 115(1)(a)(b) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 53\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F290** Words in s. 115(4) inserted (18.9.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 53\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/1900, art. 2(2), [Sch. 2](#)
- F291** Words in s. 115(8) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 53\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

## 116 Applications for additional services licences.

- (1) Where [F292] OFCOM] propose to grant a licence to provide additional services they shall publish, in such manner as they consider appropriate, a notice—
- (a) stating that they propose to grant such a licence;
  - (b) specifying—
    - (i) the period for which the licence is to be granted,

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (ii) the sound broadcasting service or services on whose frequency or frequencies the services are to be provided, and
      - (iii) <sup>F293</sup>... the extent and nature of the spare capacity which is to be allocated by the licence;
    - (c) inviting applications for the licence and specifying the closing date for such applications; and
    - (d) specifying—
      - (i) the fee payable on any application made in pursuance of the notice, and
      - (ii) the percentage of qualifying revenue for each accounting period that would be payable by an applicant in pursuance of section 118(1)(c) if he were granted the licence.
  - (2) [<sup>F292</sup>OFCOM] may, if they think fit, specify under subsection (1)(d)(ii)—
    - (a) different percentages in relation to different accounting periods falling within the period for which the licence would be in force;
    - (b) a nil percentage in relation to any accounting period so falling.
  - (3) Any application made in pursuance of a notice under this section must be in writing and accompanied by—
    - (a) the fee specified in the notice under subsection (1)(d)(i);
    - (b) a technical plan indicating—
      - (i) the nature of any additional services which the applicant proposes to provide, and
      - (ii) so far as known to the applicant, the nature of any additional services which any other person proposes to provide in accordance with section 115(3);
    - (c) the applicant's cash bid in respect of the licence; and
    - (d) such information as [<sup>F292</sup>OFCOM] may reasonably require as to the applicant's present financial position and his projected financial position during the period for which the licence would be in force.
  - (4) At any time after receiving such an application and before determining it [<sup>F292</sup>OFCOM] may require the applicant to furnish additional information under subsection (3)(b) or (d).
  - (5) Any information to be furnished to [<sup>F292</sup>OFCOM] under this section shall, if they so require, be in such form or verified in such manner as they may specify.
  - (6) [<sup>F292</sup>OFCOM] shall, as soon as reasonably practicable after the date specified in a notice under this section as the closing date for applications, publish in such manner as they consider appropriate—
    - (a) the name of every person who has made an application to them in pursuance of the notice;
    - (b) particulars of the technical plan submitted by him under subsection (3)(b); and
    - (c) such other information connected with his application as [<sup>F292</sup>OFCOM] consider appropriate.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F292** Words in s. 116 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 54\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F293** Words in s. 116(1)(b)(iii) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 54\(3\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

## 117 Procedure to be followed by Authority in connection with consideration of applications for, and awarding of, licences.

(1) Where a person has made an application for an additional services licence in accordance with section 116, [<sup>F294</sup>OFCOM] shall not proceed to consider whether to award him the licence on the basis of his cash bid in accordance with subsections (3) and (4) below unless it appears to them—

[<sup>F295</sup>(a) that the technical plan submitted under section 116(3)(b), in so far as it involves the use of an electronic communications network (within the meaning of the Communications Act 2003), contains proposals that are acceptable to them; and]

(b) that the services proposed to be provided under the licence would be capable of being maintained throughout the period for which the licence would be in force;

and any reference to an applicant in section 100 (as applied by subsection (3) below) is accordingly a reference to an applicant in whose case it appears to [<sup>F294</sup>OFCOM] that the requirements of paragraphs (a) and (b) above are satisfied.

<sup>F296</sup>(2) .....

(3) Subject to subsection (4), section 100 shall apply in relation to an additional services licence as it applies in relation to a national licence.

(4) In the application of section 100 in relation to an additional services licence—

(a) subsection (6) shall have effect with the substitution in paragraph (a) of a reference to section 118(1) for the reference to section 102(1); and

(b) subsection (9) shall have effect with the substitution in paragraph (b) of a reference to the requirement specified in subsection (1)(a) above for the reference to the requirement specified in section 99(1)(a).

(5) If at any time after an additional services licence has been granted to any person but before the licence has come into force—

(a) that person indicates to [<sup>F294</sup>OFCOM] that none of the services in question will be provided once the licence has come into force, or

(b) [<sup>F294</sup>OFCOM] for any other reason have reasonable grounds for believing that none of those services will be so provided,

then, subject to subsection (6)—

(i) [<sup>F294</sup>OFCOM] shall serve on him a notice revoking the licence as from the time the notice is served on him, and

(ii) section 100 (as applied by subsection (3) above) shall, subject to section 100(11), have effect as if he had not made an application for the licence.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (6) Subsection (5) shall not apply in the case of any person by virtue of paragraph (b) of that subsection unless [F294 OFCOM] have served on him a notice stating their grounds for believing that none of the services in question will be provided once his licence has come into force; and they shall not serve such a notice on him unless they have given him a reasonable opportunity of making representations to them about the matters complained of.

F297 (7) .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F294** Words in s. 117 substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 55(2)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F295** S. 117(1)(a) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 55(3)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F296** S. 117(2) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 55(4), **Sch. 19(1)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F297** S. 117(7) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 55(4), **Sch. 19(1)** (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

### 118 Additional payments to be made in respect of additional services licences.

- (1) An additional services licence shall include conditions requiring the licence holder to pay to [F298 OFCOM] (in addition to any fees required to be so paid by virtue of section 87(1)(c))—
- (a) in respect of the first complete calendar year falling within the period for which the licence is in force, the amount specified in his cash bid;
  - (b) in respect of each subsequent year falling wholly or partly within that period, the amount so specified as increased by the appropriate percentage; and
  - (c) in respect of each accounting period of his falling within the period referred to in paragraph (a), an amount representing such percentage of the qualifying revenue for that accounting period as was specified in relation to the licence under section 116(1)(d)(ii).
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1)(c) the qualifying revenue for any accounting period of the licence holder shall consist of all amounts which are received or to be received by him or by any connected person and are referable to the right under his licence to use, or to authorise any other person to use, in that period the spare capacity allocated by the licence.
- (3) An additional services licence may include conditions—
- (a) enabling [F298 OFCOM] to estimate before the beginning of an accounting period the amount due for that period by virtue of subsection (1)(c); and
  - (b) requiring the licence holder to pay the estimated amount by monthly instalments throughout that period.
- (4) Such a licence may in particular include conditions—
- (a) authorising [F298 OFCOM] to revise any estimate on one or more occasions, and to adjust the instalments payable by the licence holder to take account of the revised estimate;
  - (b) providing for the adjustment of any overpayment or underpayment.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(5) Where—

- (a) the first complete accounting period of the licence holder falling within the period referred to in subsection (1)(a) (“the licence period”) does not begin at the same time as that period, or
- (b) the last complete accounting period of his falling within the licence period does not end at the same time as that period,

any reference in subsection (1)(c) to an accounting period of his shall include a reference to such part of the accounting period preceding that first complete accounting period, or (as the case may be) following that last complete accounting period, as falls within the licence period; and other references to accounting periods in this Part shall be construed accordingly.

**Textual Amendments**

**F298** Words in s. 118 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 56](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**119 Additional services not to interfere with other transmissions.**

- (1) An additional services licence may include such conditions as [<sup>F299</sup>OFCOM] consider appropriate for securing that the provision of any additional service under the licence does not cause any interference with—
- (a) the sound broadcasting service or services on whose frequency or frequencies it is provided, or
  - (b) any other wireless telegraphy transmissions.

<sup>F300</sup>(2) .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F299** Words in s. 119(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 57\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F300** S. 119(2) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 57\(3\)](#), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**120 Enforcement of additional services licences.**

- (1) If [<sup>F301</sup>OFCOM] are satisfied that the holder of an additional services licence has failed to comply with any condition of the licence or with any direction given by [<sup>F301</sup>OFCOM] under or by virtue of any provision of this Part, they may (subject to subsection (3)) serve on him a notice requiring him to pay, within a specified period, a specified financial penalty to [<sup>F301</sup>OFCOM].

[<sup>F302</sup>(1A) The amount of a financial penalty imposed on a person in pursuance of subsection (1) shall not exceed 5 per cent. of the qualifying revenue for the licence holder’s last complete accounting period falling within the period for which his licence has been in force (“the relevant period”).

(1B) In relation to a person whose first complete accounting period falling within the relevant period has not ended when the penalty is imposed, subsection (1A) is to be



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

construed as referring to 5 per cent. of the amount which OFCOM estimate to be the qualifying revenue for that accounting period.

(1C) Section 118(2) applies for determining or estimating qualifying revenue for the purposes of subsection (1A) or (1B) above.]

(3) [<sup>F301</sup>OFCOM] shall not serve on any person a notice under subsection (1) unless they have given him a reasonable opportunity of making representations to them about the matters complained of.

(4) Section 111 shall apply in relation to an additional services licence as it applies in relation to a licence granted under Chapter II of this Part, but with the omission of subsection (7).

**Textual Amendments**

**F301** Words in s. 120 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 58](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

**F302** S. 120(1A)-(1C) substituted for s. 120(2) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 13 para. 8](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

**CHAPTER V**

**SUPPLEMENTAL**

**121 Computation of qualifying revenue.**

Part II of Schedule 7 (which contains provisions relating to the computation of qualifying revenue for the purposes of this Part) shall have effect.

<sup>F303</sup>**122 Certain receipts of Authority to be paid into Consolidated Fund.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F303** Ss. 122-125 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

<sup>F303</sup>**123 Frequency planning and general research and development.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F303** Ss. 122-125 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F303 124 Authority to assist Secretary of State in connection with licensing functions under 1949 Act.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F303** Ss. 122-125 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F303 125 Representation by Authority of Government and other interests in connection with broadcasting matters.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F303** Ss. 122-125 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**126 Interpretation of Part III.**

(1) In this Part (unless the context otherwise requires)—

“additional service” and “additional services licence” shall be construed in accordance with section 114(1) and section 115(9) respectively;

“the appropriate percentage”, in relation to any year, has the meaning given by section 102(10);

**F304**  
...

“cash bid” has the meaning given by section 98(8);

[**F305**“independent radio service” means a service falling to be regulated under section 245 of the Communications Act 2003;]

“licence” means a licence under this Part, and “licensed” shall be construed accordingly;

**F304**  
...

“local licence” and “national licence” mean a licence to provide a local service and a licence to provide a national service, respectively;

[**F306**“local service”, “national service” and “restricted service” each has the same meaning as in section 245 of the Communications Act 2003;

“pre-transfer local licence” and “pre-transfer national licence” each has the same meaning as in section 253 of that Act;

“radio licensable content service” has the same meaning as in Part 3 of that Act;

“radio transfer date” has the same meaning as in that Act;]

[**F307**“simulcast radio service” means a simulcast radio service within the meaning given by section 41(2) of the Broadcasting Act 1996 for the purposes of Part 2 of that Act;]

“sound broadcasting service” means a broadcasting service whose broadcasts consist of transmissions in sound only [**F308**but does not include

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

a radio multiplex service <sup>F309</sup>(within the meaning of Part 3 of the Communications Act 2003)] ;

“spare capacity” shall be construed in accordance with section 114(2).

<sup>F310</sup>(1A) For the purposes of this Part a simulcast radio service corresponds to a national service if, in accordance with section 41(3) of the Broadcasting Act 1996, it falls to be treated as so corresponding for the purposes of Part 2 of that Act.]

(2) Any reference in this Part to an area in the United Kingdom does not include an area which comprises or includes the whole of England; and nothing in this Part shall be read as precluding a local service from being provided for an area or locality that is to any extent comprised in the area or locality for which another local service is to be provided.

(3) Where the person who is for the time being the holder of any licence (“the present licence holder”) is not the person to whom the licence was originally granted, any reference in this Part (however expressed) to the holder of the licence shall be construed, in relation to any time falling before the date when the present licence holder became the holder of it, as including a reference to a person who was previously the holder of the licence.

#### Textual Amendments

**F304** Words in s. 126(1) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)**

Note 1 (with **Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), **Sch. 1** (with art. 11)

**F305** Words in s. 126(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15**

**para. 59(a)** (with **Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), **Sch. 1** (with art. 11)

**F306** Words in s. 126(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15**

**para. 59(b)** (with **Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), **Sch. 1** (with art. 11)

**F307** Words in s. 126(1) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), **ss. 256(2)**, 411(2) (with

**Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), **Sch. 1** (with art. 11)

**F308** Words in s. 126 inserted (1.10.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 148(1), **Sch. 10 Pt. I para. 9** (with s. 43(1)(6));

S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, **Sch. 1**

**F309** Words in s. 126(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15**

**para. 59(c)** (with **Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), **Sch. 1** (with art. 11)

**F310** S. 126(1A) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), **ss. 256(3)**, 411(2) (with **Sch.**

**18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), **Sch. 1** (with art. 11)

## PART IV

### TRANSFER OF UNDERTAKINGS OF IBA AND CABLE AUTHORITY

#### *Transfer of undertakings*

#### **127 Division of assets of IBA and their dissolution.**

(1) On such day as the Secretary of State may by order appoint as the transfer date there shall come into force a scheme made under Schedule 9 to this Act and providing for the division of the property, rights and liabilities of the IBA between—

- (a) the Commission,
- (b) the Radio Authority, and

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (c) a company nominated for the purposes of this subsection by the Secretary of State.
- (2) The Secretary of State may, by order made before the transfer date, nominate for the purposes of subsection (1) any company formed and registered under the <sup>M4</sup>Companies Act 1985; but on that date the company must be a company limited by shares which is wholly owned by the Crown.
- (3) Subject to subsection (4), the IBA shall continue in existence after the transfer date until such time as they are dissolved by order made by the Secretary of State.
- (4) On the transfer date the chairman and members of the IBA shall cease to hold office; and as from that date the IBA—
- (a) shall consist only of a chairman appointed by the Secretary of State and, if the Secretary of State thinks fit, such one or more other persons as the Secretary of State may appoint as members of the IBA; and
- (b) shall have only the functions which fall to be carried out by the IBA under or by virtue of Schedule 9.
- (5) If requested to do so by the chairman appointed under subsection (4)(a), the Commission shall furnish the IBA with any assistance required by them for the purpose of carrying out any of those functions.
- (6) The Secretary of State shall not make an order under subsection (3) unless he is satisfied, after consultation with the IBA and with each of the bodies referred to in subsection (1)(a) to (c), that nothing further remains to be done by the IBA under or by virtue of Schedule 9.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C56** S. 127(1): 1.1.1991 appointed as the transfer date for the purposes of s. 127(1) by S.I. 1990/2540, **art. 2**

**Marginal Citations**

**M4** 1985 c. 6.

**128 Vesting in Commission of assets of Cable Authority and dissolution of Authority.**

- (1) On the transfer date all the property, rights and liabilities to which the Cable Authority were entitled or subject immediately before that date shall become property, rights and liabilities of the Commission; and Schedule 10 to this Act shall have effect for the purpose of supplementing this and the following provisions of this section.
- (2) Subject to subsection (3), the Cable Authority shall continue in existence after the transfer date until such time as they are dissolved by order made by the Secretary of State.
- (3) On the transfer date the chairman and members of the Cable Authority shall cease to hold office; and as from that date the Authority—
- (a) shall consist only of a chairman appointed by the Secretary of State and, if the Secretary of State thinks fit, such one or more other persons as the Secretary of State may appoint as members of the Authority; and

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) shall have only the functions which fall to be carried out by the Authority under or by virtue of Schedule 10.
- (4) If requested to do so by the chairman appointed under subsection (3)(a), the Commission shall furnish the Cable Authority with any assistance required by them for the purpose of carrying out any of those functions.
- (5) The Secretary of State shall not make an order under subsection (2) unless he is satisfied, after consultation with the Cable Authority and the Commission, that nothing further remains to be done by the Authority under or by virtue of that Schedule.
- (6) References in this Part to property, rights and liabilities of the Cable Authority include references to property, rights and liabilities which are not capable of being transferred or assigned by the Authority.

#### *Transitional arrangements*

### **129 Transitional arrangements relating to IBA's broadcasting services.**

- (1) Schedule 11 to this Act shall have effect—
  - (a) with respect to the provision by the Commission and the Welsh Authority, during the period beginning with the transfer date and ending with 31st December 1992, of television broadcasting services which have been provided by the IBA under the <sup>M5</sup>Broadcasting Act 1981 down to the transfer date;
  - (b) for the purpose of the regulation by the Commission after the end of that period of services provided in succession to the DBS services provided by them during that period; and
  - (c) in the case of local sound broadcasting services which have been provided by the IBA down to the transfer date—
    - (i) with respect to the provision of such services on and after that date by the Radio Authority, and
    - (ii) for the purpose of the regulation by that Authority on and after that date of services provided in succession to such services.
- (2) The programmes provided by a programme contractor under his contract for inclusion in any broadcasting service provided by the Commission or the Radio Authority in accordance with Part II or IV of Schedule 11 shall not be transmitted by, or under arrangements made by, the Commission or the Radio Authority (as the case may be) but shall be transmitted—
  - (a) by the nominated company in pursuance of a contract made between that company and the programme contractor in accordance with section 130, or
  - (b) under arrangements made in accordance with subsection (3)(a) of that section in a case where any such contract made between a DBS programme contractor and that company is terminated by the contractor as mentioned in that provision.
- (3) The programmes broadcast on Channel 4 and S4C respectively during the interim period in accordance with Part II of Schedule 11 shall not be transmitted by, or under arrangements made by, the Commission but shall be transmitted by the nominated company—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) in the case of the programmes broadcast on Channel 4, in pursuance of such a contract made between that company and the Channel 4 company as is mentioned in subsection (4), and
  - (b) in the case of the programmes broadcast on S4C, in pursuance of such a contract made between the nominated company and the Welsh Authority as is mentioned in subsection (6).
- (4) The contract referred to in subsection (3)(a) is a contract which makes provision for and in connection with the transmission by the nominated company during the interim period of the programmes to be broadcast on Channel 4 during that period, and in particular makes provision—
- (a) for specified standards relating to technical quality, coverage and reliability to be attained in connection with the transmission of those programmes by that company; and
  - (b) for the transmission of those programmes to be suspended, if the Commission so direct in circumstances falling within subsection (5), for such period, or in the case of such programme or programmes, as they may specify.
- (5) The circumstances referred to in subsection (4)(b) are circumstances where the Commission consider it necessary to require the transmission of the programmes in question to be suspended in order for them to comply, or secure compliance, with the provisions of the <sup>M6</sup>Broadcasting Act 1981 (as it has effect in accordance with Part II of Schedule 11 to this Act) or with any restriction or requirement imposed thereunder.
- (6) The contract referred to in subsection (3)(b) is a contract which makes provision for and in connection with the transmission by the nominated company during the interim period of the programmes to be broadcast on S4C during that period, and in particular makes provision for specified standards relating to technical quality, coverage and reliability to be attained in connection with the transmission of those programmes by that company.
- (7) In the following provisions, namely—
- (a) Parts II and IV of Schedule 11 to this Act, and
  - (b) any provision of the <sup>M7</sup>Broadcasting Act 1981 which is to be construed as referring to the Commission or to the Radio Authority by virtue of either of those Parts of that Schedule,
- any reference (however expressed) to the broadcasting of programmes, or to programmes broadcast, by the Commission or the Radio Authority shall, in consequence of subsections (2) and (3) above, be read as a reference to the broadcasting of programmes, or to programmes broadcast, by that body whether the transmission of the programmes is undertaken (according to the circumstances of the case)—
- (i) by, or under arrangements made by, that body, or
    - (ii) by the nominated company in pursuance of any such contract as is referred to in either of those subsections, or
    - (iii) under any such arrangements as are referred to in subsection (2)(b);
- and those Parts of that Schedule contain other modifications of provisions of that Act which are consequential on those subsections.
- (8) This section and section 130 shall have effect in relation to any teletext service provided by the Commission in accordance with Part II of Schedule 11 as if—

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) any reference to a programme or television programme were a reference to a teletext transmission; and
  - (b) any reference to a programme contractor were a reference to a teletext contractor.
- (9) This section and section 130 shall, in so far as they apply to the transmission of the programmes provided by a DBS programme contractor under his contract for inclusion in any DBS service provided by the Commission in accordance with Part II of Schedule 11, be construed as applying only to the carrying on of such activities in connection with the transmission of those programmes as were being so carried on by the IBA immediately before the transfer date.
- (10) In this section—
- “the Channel 4 company” means the body corporate referred to in section 12(2) of the Broadcasting Act 1981, and “on Channel 4” means in the additional broadcasting service referred to in section 10(1) of that Act, but excluding so much of that service as consisted, immediately before the transfer date, in the broadcasting of programmes for reception wholly or mainly in Wales;
  - “the interim period” means the period specified in subsection (1)(a) above;
  - “on S4C” has the same meaning as in Part I of this Act.
- (11) The reference in subsection (4) or (6) to specified standards is a reference to such standards as the IBA shall specify for the purposes of that subsection before the transfer date.

#### Marginal Citations

- M5** 1981 c. 68.
- M6** 1981 c. 68.
- M7** 1981 c. 68.

### **130 Variation of programme contracts to take account of new transmission arrangements.**

- (1) Subject to subsections (2) and (4), it shall be the duty of the IBA to make before the transfer date such variations of each contract between them and a programme contractor (“the programme contract”) as appear to them to be appropriate—
- (a) for requiring the programme contractor to enter into a contract with the nominated company which makes provision for and in connection with the transmission by that company during the interim period of the programmes which the programme contractor has the right and the duty to provide under the programme contract, and in particular makes provision—
    - (i) for specified standards relating to technical quality, coverage and reliability to be attained in connection with the transmission of those programmes by that company,
    - (ii) for the transmission of those programmes to be suspended, if the relevant authority so direct in circumstances falling within subsection (5), for such period, or in the case of such programme or programmes, as they may specify, and



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (iii) where the programme contractor is a TV programme contractor, for the consideration payable in respect of the transmission of those programmes to be payable in accordance with subsection (6); and
  - (b) for securing that the right and the duty of the programme contractor under the programme contract to provide those programmes is accordingly (so long as any such contract with the nominated company remains in force) a right and a duty to provide them for transmission by that company.
- (2) Subsection (1) shall apply to a contract for the provision of television programmes for broadcasting in a DBS service (“a DBS programme contract”) as if—
- (a) the reference to coverage in paragraph (a)(i) were omitted; and
  - (b) for paragraph (a)(iii) there were substituted—
    - “(iii) for the programme contractor to be entitled to terminate the contract if he is notified by the Commission that they are satisfied that the standards referred to in sub-paragraph (i) are not being attained as mentioned in that sub-paragraph;”.
- (3) The IBA shall, in the case of any DBS programme contract, make before the transfer date such variations of the contract as appear to them to be appropriate—
- (a) for requiring the DBS programme contractor, if he terminates his contract with the nominated company under any provision included in the contract in consequence of subsection (2)(b), to make such arrangements as the Commission may approve for and in connection with the transmission during the interim period of the programmes which he has the right and the duty to provide under the DBS programme contract, being arrangements under which—
    - (i) specified standards relating to technical quality and reliability are to be attained in connection with the transmission of those programmes under the arrangements, and
    - (ii) the transmission of those programmes is to be suspended, if the Commission so direct in circumstances falling within subsection (5), for such period, or in the case of such programme or programmes, as they may specify; and
  - (b) for securing that the right and the duty of the programme contractor under the DBS programme contract to provide those programmes is accordingly (so long as any such arrangements remain in force) a right and a duty to provide them for transmission under the arrangements.
- (4) Subsection (1) shall apply to a contract for the provision of local sound broadcasts as if the reference to the interim period were a reference to the remainder of the period for which the contract continues in force by virtue of paragraph 2(1) in Part IV of Schedule 11; and that subsection accordingly does not apply to any such contract if—
- (a) the programme contractor notifies the IBA, before such date as they shall determine, that he proposes to request the Radio Authority to determine the contract as from the transfer date in accordance with paragraph 1(1) in Part V of that Schedule; or
  - (b) the contract is one to which paragraph 2(1) in that Part of that Schedule would apply on the transfer date.
- (5) The circumstances referred to in paragraph (a)(ii) of subsection (1) or (3) are circumstances where the relevant authority or (as the case may be) the Commission

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

consider it necessary to require the transmission of the programmes in question to be suspended—

- (a) in order for them to comply, or secure compliance, with the provisions of the <sup>M8</sup>Broadcasting Act 1981 (as it has effect in accordance with Schedule 11 to this Act) or with any restriction or requirement imposed thereunder, or
  - (b) in view of any matter which they consider constitutes or would constitute a breach of the programme contractor's contract.
- (6) The IBA shall make before the transfer date such variations of each contract between them and a TV programme contractor as appear to them to be appropriate for requiring the programme contractor to enter into an agreement with all of the other TV programme contractors which—
- (a) relates to the payment by those contractors to the nominated company of the consideration payable by them in respect of the transmission by that company of the programmes provided by them; and
  - (b) provides for the amounts payable by each of the contractors to be such proportion of the total consideration so payable as corresponds to the proportion of the relevant amount which he was liable to pay by virtue of section 32(1)(a) of the Broadcasting Act 1981 (rental payments) in respect of the period beginning with 1st April 1990 and ending with the transfer date; and in paragraph (b) “the relevant amount” means the aggregate amount of all payments falling to be made by TV programme contractors by virtue of section 32(1)(a) of that Act in respect of that period (excluding any payments falling to be so made in consequence of section 13(2) of that Act (advertisements on Channel 4)).
- (7) The IBA shall, in the case of each such contract as is mentioned in subsection (6), also make before the transfer date such variations of the contract as appear to them to be appropriate in consequence of section 129(3).
- (8) In this section—
- “the interim period” means the period specified in section 129(1)(a);
- “the relevant authority”—
- (a) in relation to any such contract as is mentioned in subsection (1)(a) which relates to the transmission of television programmes, means the Commission, and
  - (b) in relation to any such contract which relates to the transmission of local sound broadcasts, means the Radio Authority;
- and section 129(8) and (9) apply for the purposes of this section.
- (9) Any reference in subsection (1) or (3) to specified standards is a reference to such standards as the IBA shall specify for the purposes of that subsection before the transfer date; and different standards may be so specified for the purposes of subsection (1) in relation to programme contractors of different descriptions.

---

**Marginal Citations**

**M8** 1981 c. 68.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### **131 Supplementary provisions relating to variation of programme contracts.**

- (1) Where the IBA make any variation of a programme contract in pursuance of section 130(1) to (4) or (6), they may make such variations of that contract of a supplemental, incidental, consequential or transitional nature as they consider appropriate.
- (2) The relevant authority may on or after the transfer date make any variation of a programme contract which could have been made before that date by the IBA—
  - (a) in pursuance of section 130(1) to (4), or
  - (b) in pursuance of subsection (1) above in connection with any variation made in pursuance of section 130(1) to (4);
 and any such variation may be made with retrospective effect as from that date.
- (3) Before making any variation of a programme contract in pursuance of any provision of section 130, this section or Schedule 11, the IBA or (as the case may be) the relevant authority shall consult the programme contractor concerned.
- (4) Any such variation shall be made by means of a notice served on that programme contractor.
- (5) In this section—
  - “programme contract” means a contract between the IBA and a programme contractor;
  - “programme contractor” includes a teletext contractor;
  - “the relevant authority”—
    - (a) in relation to a programme contract for the provision of television programmes or teletext transmissions, means the Commission; and
    - (b) in relation to a programme contract for the provision of local sound broadcasts, means the Radio Authority.

### **132 Disposal by IBA of DBS transmitting equipment etc.**

- (1) The IBA shall have power, with the approval of the Secretary of State—
  - (a) to dispose of any relevant assets to a DBS contractor; and
  - (b) to do so on such terms and for such consideration as they may determine (whether or not any such consideration represents the market value of the assets).
- (2) Any disposal under subsection (1) shall take effect on the transfer date.
- (3) In this section “relevant asset” means any equipment or other asset (of whatever description) which has been used or held by the IBA in connection with the transmission of DBS services.

### **133 Functions exercisable by IBA before transfer date in connection with local sound broadcasting.**

- (1) It shall be the duty of the IBA to prepare before the transfer date, in the case of each relevant programme contractor, a contract which—
  - (a) is expressed to be made between the nominated company and the contractor; and

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) is to come into force in accordance with subsection (3) at such time (if any) as the contractor becomes the holder of a local licence by virtue of paragraph 1(1) in Part V of Schedule 11 to this Act; and
  - (c) makes provision in connection with the transmission, as from any such time, of the programmes included in the local service provided by the contractor (as the holder of such a licence), which may include provision for the transmission of those programmes by the nominated company.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1) the IBA shall, after consultation with all the relevant programme contractors, draw up a number of different standard forms of contract, and each contract prepared by them under that subsection shall be in such one of those forms as they may determine after consultation with the relevant programme contractor concerned.
- (3) Any contract prepared under subsection (1) shall by virtue of this subsection come into force, as a contract between the nominated company and the relevant programme contractor concerned, at any such time as is mentioned in paragraph (b) of that subsection and (subject to the provisions of the contract) shall continue in force for such period as is specified in it, being a period expiring not later than 31st December 1994.
- (4) If—
  - (a) any contract prepared under subsection (1) has not yet come into force, and
  - (b) the nominated company and the relevant programme contractor concerned agree that it would be more appropriate for them to be parties to a contract which is in one of the other forms of contract drawn up as mentioned in subsection (2), and
  - (c) the nominated company prepares such a contract as is mentioned in subsection (1) which is in that other form,subsection (3) shall have effect in relation to that contract as if it had been prepared by the IBA under subsection (1) (and accordingly shall not have effect in relation to the contract referred to in paragraph (a) above).
- (5) The IBA shall be deemed to have had power to impose such requirements as have been imposed by them on the various local sound programme contractors with respect to the making of payments to the IBA for the purpose of enabling reductions to be made in relevant charges; and in this subsection “relevant charges” means charges made by the nominated company in connection with the transmission, during the period beginning with the transfer date and ending with 31st December 1994, of programmes which are included in local services falling within any description of such services determined by the IBA.
- (6) The IBA shall have power, with the approval of the Secretary of State—
  - (a) to dispose of, or of an interest in, any relevant assets to a relevant programme contractor; and
  - (b) to do so on such terms and for such consideration as they may determine (whether or not any such consideration represents the market value of the assets).
- (7) In this section—
  - “local licence” and “local service” have the same meaning as in Part III of this Act;

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“local sound programme contractor” means a person who is a programme contractor by virtue of a contract for the provision of local sound broadcasts;

“relevant asset” means any equipment or other asset (of whatever description) which has been used or held by the IBA in connection with the transmission of local sound broadcasts;

“relevant programme contractor” means the programme contractor under a contract which, if effective immediately before the transfer date, would be a contract to which paragraph 2(1) in Part IV of Schedule 11 applied.

**F311 134 Transitional arrangements relating to existing cable services.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F311** S. 134 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

*Provisions relating to nominated company*

**135 Initial Government holding in nominated company.**

- (1) As a consequence of the vesting in the nominated company, in accordance with the scheme made under Schedule 9 to this Act, of property, rights and liabilities of the IBA, that company shall issue to the Secretary of State such securities of the company as he may from time to time direct.
- (2) The Secretary of State shall not give a direction under subsection (1) at a time when the nominated company has ceased to be wholly owned by the Crown.
- (3) Securities required to be issued in pursuance of this section shall be issued at such time or times, and (subject to subsection (4)) on such terms, as the Secretary of State may direct.
- (4) Any shares issued in pursuance of this section—
  - (a) shall be of such nominal value as the Secretary of State may direct; and
  - (b) shall be issued as fully paid and treated for the purposes of the <sup>M9</sup>Companies Act 1985 as if they had been paid up by virtue of the payment to the nominated company of their nominal value in cash.
- (5) The Secretary of State shall not exercise any power conferred on him by this section, or dispose of any securities issued to him in pursuance of this section, without the consent of the Treasury.
- (6) Without prejudice to the generality of section 198(2), any dividends or other sums received by the Secretary of State in right of or on the disposal of any securities acquired by virtue of this section shall be paid into the Consolidated Fund.

**Marginal Citations**

**M9** 1985 c. 6.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### **136 Exercise of functions through nominees.**

- (1) The Secretary of State may, with the consent of the Treasury, appoint any person to act as his nominee, or one of his nominees, for the purposes of section 135; but any issue of securities to any such nominee in pursuance of that section shall be effected in accordance with such directions as may be given from time to time by the Secretary of State with the consent of the Treasury.
- (2) Any person holding any securities as a nominee of the Secretary of State by virtue of subsection (1) shall hold and deal with them (or any of them) on such terms and in such manner as the Secretary of State may direct with the consent of the Treasury.

### **137 Target investment limit for Government shareholding in nominated company.**

- (1) As soon as he considers it expedient, and in any case not later than six months after the nominated company ceases to be wholly owned by the Crown, the Secretary of State shall by order fix a target investment limit in relation to the aggregate of the shares for the time being held in the company, under or by virtue of any enactment, by any Minister of the Crown or any nominee of his (“the Government shareholding”).
- (2) The target investment limit for the Government shareholding in the company shall be expressed as a proportion of the voting rights which are exercisable in all circumstances at general meetings of the company (“the ordinary voting rights”).
- (3) The first target investment limit fixed under this section for the Government shareholding in the company shall be equal to the proportion of the ordinary voting rights which is in fact carried by the Government shareholding in the company at the time when the order fixing the limit is made.
- (4) The Secretary of State may from time to time by order fix a new target investment limit for the Government shareholding in the company in place of the one previously in force under this section; but—
  - (a) any new limit must be lower than the one it replaces; and
  - (b) an order under this section may only be revoked by an order fixing a new limit.
- (5) It shall be the duty of a Minister of the Crown so to exercise—
  - (a) any power to dispose of any shares held in the company under or by virtue of any enactment, and
  - (b) his power to give directions to any nominee of his,as to secure that the Government shareholding in the company does not carry a proportion of the ordinary voting rights exceeding any target investment limit for the time being in force under this section.
- (6) Notwithstanding subsection (5), a Minister of the Crown may take up, or direct any nominee of his to take up, any rights for the time being available to him, or to the nominee, as an existing holder of shares or other securities of the company; but if, as a result, the proportion of the ordinary voting rights carried by the Government shareholding in the company at any time exceeds the target investment limit for the time being in force under this section, it shall be the duty of that Minister to comply with subsection (5) as soon after that time as is reasonably practicable.
- (7) References in this section to a Minister of the Crown include references to the Treasury; and for the purposes of this section the temporary suspension of any of the ordinary voting rights shall be disregarded.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (8) Any order under this section shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

### **138 Reserves of nominated company.**

- (1) If the Secretary of State so directs at any time before the nominated company ceases to be wholly owned by the Crown, such sums as may be specified in the direction shall, instead of being applied in any other way, be carried by the company to a reserve (“the statutory reserve”).
- (2) The statutory reserve may only be applied by the nominated company in paying up unissued shares of the company to be allotted to members of the company as fully paid bonus shares.
- (3) Notwithstanding subsection (2), the statutory reserve shall not count as an undistributable reserve of the nominated company for the purposes of subsection (3)(d) of section 264 of the <sup>M10</sup>Companies Act 1985 (restriction on distribution of assets); but, for the purpose of determining under that section whether the nominated company may make a distribution at any time, any amount for the time being standing to the credit of the statutory reserve shall be treated for the purposes of subsection (3)(c) of that section as if it were unrealised profits of the company.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M10** 1985 c. 6.

### **139 Loans by Secretary of State to nominated company.**

- (1) As from the transfer date the Secretary of State may, with the consent of the Treasury, make loans to the nominated company out of money provided by Parliament; but no loan shall be made by him under this section at a time when the company has ceased to be wholly owned by the Crown.
- (2) The aggregate amount outstanding in respect of the principal of loans made by the Secretary of State under this section shall not exceed the limit specified in subsection (3).
- (3) That limit is £20 million or such greater sum, not exceeding £100 million, as the Secretary of State may from time to time specify by order made with the consent of the Treasury.
- (4) Any loan made by the Secretary of State under this section shall be repaid to him at such times and by such methods, and interest on the loan shall be paid to him at such times and at such rates, as he may from time to time direct with the consent of the Treasury.
- (5) An order shall not be made by the Secretary of State under this section unless a draft of it has been laid before and approved by a resolution of the House of Commons.

### **140 Temporary restriction on borrowings of nominated company.**

- (1) The aggregate amount outstanding in respect of the principal of any relevant borrowing of the nominated company shall not, at any time when the company is



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

wholly owned by the Crown, exceed such sum as the Secretary of State may determine with the consent of the Treasury.

- (2) In subsection (1) “relevant borrowing”, in relation to the nominated company, means—
- (a) loans made to that company or to any subsidiary of that company, other than—
    - (i) loans so made by any such subsidiary or (as the case may be) by that company, and
    - (ii) loans made to that company by the Secretary of State under section 139; and
  - (b) loans which are to be treated as having been made to that company, including loans which are to be treated as having been so made by virtue of the issue of debentures in pursuance of section 135.

### *General*

## **141 Interpretation of Part IV.**

- (1) In this Part—
- “the Commission” means the Independent Television Commission;
  - “debentures” includes debenture stock;
  - “the IBA” means the Independent Broadcasting Authority;
  - “the nominated company” means the company nominated for the purposes of section 127(1);
  - “securities”, in relation to a company, includes shares, debentures, bonds and other securities of the company, whether or not constituting a charge on the assets of the company;
  - “shares” includes stock;
  - “subsidiary” has the meaning given by section 736 of the <sup>M11</sup>Companies Act 1985;
  - “the transfer date” means the day appointed under section 127(1).
- (2) Other expressions used in this Part which are also used in the <sup>M12</sup>Broadcasting Act 1981 have the same meaning as in that Act.
- (3) The nominated company shall be regarded for the purposes of this Part as wholly owned by the Crown at any time when each of the issued shares in the company is held by, or by a nominee of, the Secretary of State.

### **Marginal Citations**

**M11** 1985 c. 6.

**M12** 1981 c. 68.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## <sup>F312</sup>PART V

### THE BROADCASTING COMPLAINTS COMMISSION

---

#### Textual Amendments

**F312** Ss.142-150 repealed (1.4.1997) by 1996 c. 55, ss.148(2), 149(2), **Sch. 11 Pt. I** (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1997/1005, **art. 4**

---

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C57** Pt. V (ss. 142–150) modified by S.I. 1990/2579, **art. 2(2)**

## <sup>F313</sup>PART VI

### THE BROADCASTING STANDARDS COUNCIL

---

#### Textual Amendments

**F313** Ss. 151-161 repealed (1.4.1997) by 1996 c. 55, ss. 148(2), 149(2), **Sch. 11 Pt. I** (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1997/1005, **art. 4**

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## PART VII

### PROHIBITION ON INCLUSION OF OBSCENE AND OTHER MATERIAL IN PROGRAMME SERVICES

#### Obscenity

#### 162 Obscenity in programme services: England and Wales.

- (1) In section 1 of the <sup>M13</sup>Obscene Publications Act 1959 (test of obscenity)—
- (a) the proviso to subsection (3) (exemption for television and sound broadcasting) shall cease to have effect; and
  - (b) the following subsections shall be added after that subsection—
    - “(4) For the purposes of this Act a person also publishes an article to the extent that any matter recorded on it is included by him in a programme included in a programme service.
    - (5) Where the inclusion of any matter in a programme so included would, if that matter were recorded matter, constitute the publication of an obscene article for the purposes of this Act by virtue of subsection (4) above, this Act shall have effect in relation to the inclusion of that matter in that programme as if it were recorded matter.
    - (6) In this section “programme” and “programme service” have the same meaning as in the Broadcasting Act 1990.”
- (2) Schedule 15 to this Act shall have effect for the purpose of supplementing subsection (1) above.

#### Marginal Citations

M13 1959 c. 66.

#### 163 Obscenity in programme services: Scotland.

- (1) Section 51 of the <sup>M14</sup>Civic Government (Scotland) Act 1982 (offences of displaying, publishing, etc. of obscene material) shall be amended in accordance with the following provisions of this section.
- (2) After subsection (2) there shall be inserted the following subsection—
- “(2A) Subject to subsection (4) below, any person who—
    - (a) is responsible for the inclusion of any obscene material in a programme included in a programme service; or
    - (b) with a view to its eventual inclusion in a programme so included, makes, prints, has or keeps any obscene material,shall be guilty of an offence under this section.”
- (3) In subsection (6), paragraph (a) shall cease to have effect.
- (4) In subsection (8)—
- (a) in the definition of “material”, the words from “and” onwards shall be omitted;
  - (b) after the definition of “prescribed sum” there shall be inserted—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- ““programme” and “programme service” have the same meaning as in the Broadcasting Act 1990;” and
- (c) the word “showing,” shall be omitted.

**Marginal Citations**

**M14** 1982 c. 45.

*Racially inflammatory material etc.*

**164 Inclusion in programme services in Great Britain of racially inflammatory material.**

- (1) Part III of the <sup>M15</sup>Public Order Act 1986 (racial hatred) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In each of the following provisions, namely—
- (a) section 18(6) (exemption from prohibition applying to use of threatening words etc.),
  - (b) section 20(3)(c) (exemption from prohibition applying to public performances of plays), and
  - (c) section 21(4) (exemption from prohibition applying to distribution etc. of recordings),
- for “broadcast or included in a cable programme service” there shall be substituted “included in a programme service”.
- (3) In section 22 (broadcasting or including programme in cable programme service)—
- (a) in subsections (1), (3)(b), (4)(a) and (5)(a), for “broadcast or included in a cable programme service”, wherever occurring, there shall be substituted “included in a programme service”; and
  - (b) the following provisions shall be omitted, namely—
    - (i) in subsection (2), the words “broadcasting or cable”,
    - (ii) in subsections (4)(b) and (5)(b), the words “broadcast or”, wherever occurring,
    - (iii) subsection (7) (exemption for programmes broadcast by BBC or Independent Broadcasting Authority), and
    - (iv) subsection (8) (application of certain provisions of the <sup>M16</sup>Cable and Broadcasting Act 1984).
- (4) In section 23 (possession of racially inflammatory material)—
- (a) in subsection (1), for “broadcast or included in a cable programme service”, wherever occurring, there shall be substituted “ or included in a programme service”;
  - (b) in subsection (2), for “broadcasting or inclusion in a cable programme service” there shall be substituted “ or inclusion in a programme service”; and
  - (c) subsection (4) (exemption for material kept by BBC or Independent Broadcasting Authority) shall be omitted.
- (5) In section 29 (interpretation)—

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the definitions of “broadcast” and “cable programme service” shall be omitted;
- (b) in the definition of “programme”, for “broadcast or included in a cable programme service” there shall be substituted “ included in a programme service ”; and
- (c) the following definition shall be inserted after that definition—  
““programme service” has the same meaning as in the Broadcasting Act 1990;”.

#### Marginal Citations

**M15** 1986 c. 64.

**M16** 1984 c. 46.

### **165 Inclusion in programme services in Northern Ireland of material likely to stir up hatred etc.**

- (1) Part III of the <sup>M17</sup>Public Order (Northern Ireland) Order 1987 (stirring up hatred or arousing fear) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In each of the following provisions, namely—
  - (a) Article 9(5) (exemption from prohibition applying to use of threatening words etc.), and
  - (b) Article 11(4) (exemption from prohibition applying to distribution etc. of recordings),for “broadcast or included in a cable programme service” there shall be substituted “ included in a programme service ”.
- (3) In Article 12 (broadcasting or including programme in cable programme service)—
  - (a) in paragraphs (1), (3)(b), (4)(a) and (5)(a), for “broadcast or included in a cable programme service”, wherever occurring, there shall be substituted “ included in a programme service ”; and
  - (b) the following provisions shall be omitted—
    - (i) in paragraph (2)(a), the words “broadcasting or cable”,
    - (ii) in paragraphs (4)(b) and (5)(b), the words “broadcast or”, wherever occurring,
    - (iii) paragraph (7) (exemption for programmes broadcast by BBC or Independent Broadcasting Authority), and
    - (iv) paragraph (8) (application of certain provisions of <sup>M18</sup>Cable and Broadcasting Act 1984).
- (4) In Article 13 (possession of matter intended or likely to stir up hatred or arouse fear)—
  - (a) in paragraph (1), for “broadcast or included in a cable programme service”, wherever occurring, there shall be substituted “ or included in a programme service ”
  - (b) in paragraph (2), for “broadcasting or inclusion in a cable programme service” there shall be substituted “ or inclusion in a programme service ” and
  - (c) paragraph (4) (exemption for material kept by BBC or Independent Broadcasting Authority) shall be omitted.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(5) In Article 17 (interpretation)—

- (a) the definitions of “broadcast” and “cable programme service” shall be omitted;
- (b) in the definition of “programme”, for “broadcast or included in a cable programme service” there shall be substituted “ included in a programme service ”; and
- (c) the following definition shall be inserted after that definition—

“ “programme service” has the same meaning as in the Broadcasting Act 1990;”.

#### Marginal Citations

**M17** S.I.1987/463 (N.I.7).

**M18** 1984 c. 46.

### *Defamation*

#### **166 Defamatory material.**

- (1) For the purposes of the law of libel and slander (including the law of criminal libel so far as it relates to the publication of defamatory matter) the publication of words in the course of any programme included in a programme service shall be treated as publication in permanent form.
- (2) Subsection (1) above shall apply for the purposes of section 3 of each of the Defamation Acts (slander of title etc.) as it applies for the purposes of the law of libel and slander.
- [<sup>F314</sup>(3) Section 7 of each of those Acts (qualified privilege of newspapers) shall apply in relation to—
  - (a) reports or matters included in a programme service, and
  - (b) any inclusion in such a service of any such report or matter,
 as it applies in relation to reports and matters published in a newspaper and to publication in a newspaper; and subsection (2) of that section shall have effect, in relation to any such inclusion, as if for the words “in the newspaper in which” there were substituted the words “ in the programme service in which ”.]
- (4) In this section “the Defamation Acts” means the <sup>M19</sup>Defamation Act 1952 and the <sup>M20</sup>Defamation Act (Northern Ireland) 1955.
- (5) Subsections (1) and (2) above do not extend to Scotland.

#### Textual Amendments

**F314** S. 166(3) repealed (31.3.2001 for S. and otherwise *prosp.*) by 1996 c. 31, ss. 16, 19, **Sch. 2** (with s. 20(2)); S.S.I. 2001/98, **art. 3**

#### Marginal Citations

**M19** 1952 c. 66.

**M20** 1955 c. 11 (N.I.).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### Supplementary

#### 167 Power to make copies of recordings.

- (1) If a justice of the peace is satisfied by information on oath laid by a constable that there is reasonable ground for suspecting that a relevant offence has been committed by any person in respect of a programme included in a programme service, he may make an order authorising any constable to require that person—
  - (a) to produce to the constable a visual or sound recording of any matter included in that programme, if and so far as that person is able to do so; and
  - (b) on the production of such a recording, to afford the constable an opportunity of causing a copy of it to be made.
- (2) An order made under this section shall describe the programme to which it relates in a manner sufficient to enable that programme to be identified.
- (3) A person who without reasonable excuse fails to comply with any requirement of a constable made by virtue of subsection (1) shall be guilty of an offence and liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the third level on the standard scale.
- (4) No order shall be made under this section in respect of any recording in respect of which a warrant could be granted under any of the following provisions, namely—
  - (a) section 3 of the <sup>M21</sup>Obscene Publications Act 1959;
  - (b) section 24 of the <sup>M22</sup>Public Order Act 1986; and
  - (c) Article 14 of the <sup>M23</sup>Public Order (Northern Ireland) Order 1987.
- (5) In the application of subsection (1) to England and Wales “relevant offence” means an offence under—
  - (a) section 2 of the Obscene Publications Act 1959; or
  - (b) section 22 of the Public Order Act 1986.
- (6) In the application of subsection (1) to Scotland—
  - (a) “relevant offence” means an offence under—
    - (i) section 51 of the <sup>M24</sup>Civic Government (Scotland) Act 1982, or
    - (ii) section 22 of the Public Order Act 1986;
  - (b) the reference to a justice of the peace shall include a reference to the sheriff; and
  - (c) for the reference to information on oath there shall be substituted a reference to evidence on oath.
- (7) In the application of subsection (1) to Northern Ireland—
  - (a) “relevant offence” means an offence under Article 12 of the Public Order (Northern Ireland) Order 1987;
  - (b) for the reference to a justice of the peace there shall be substituted a reference to a resident magistrate; and
  - (c) for the reference to information on oath laid by a constable there shall be substituted a reference to a complaint on oath made by a constable.

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C68** S. 167 amended (1.4.1997) by 1996 c. 55, s. 117 (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1997/1005, art. 4



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Marginal Citations

- M21** 1959 c. 66.  
**M22** 1986 c. 64.  
**M23** S.I.1987/463 (N.I.7).  
**M24** 1982 c. 45.

## PART VIII

### PROVISIONS RELATING TO WIRELESS TELEGRAPHY

#### 168 Offence of keeping wireless telegraphy station or apparatus available for unauthorised use.

The following section shall be inserted after section 1 of the <sup>M25</sup>Wireless Telegraphy Act 1949 (in this Part referred to as “the 1949 Act”)—

**“1A Offence of keeping wireless telegraphy station or apparatus available for unauthorised use.**

Any person who has any station for wireless telegraphy or apparatus for wireless telegraphy in his possession or under his control and either—

- (a) intends to use it in contravention of section 1 of this Act; or
- (b) knows, or has reasonable cause to believe, that another person intends to use it in contravention of that section,

shall be guilty of an offence.”

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C69** Ss. 168-173 extended (with modifications) (1.6.1994) by S.I. 1994/1064, art. 3(2), **Sch. Pt. II**  
**C70** Ss. 168-173 extended (with modifications) (29.12.2003) by [The Wireless Telegraphy \(Jersey\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/3196\)](#), arts. 1, 3(2), **Sch. Pt. II**; amendment to earlier affecting provision SI 2003/3196 (27.2.2004) by [The Broadcasting and Communications \(Jersey\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/308\)](#), arts. 1(1), 6(1), **Sch. 2**

#### Marginal Citations

- M25** 1949 c. 54.

#### 169 Offence of allowing premises to be used for purpose of unlawful broadcasting.

The following section shall be inserted in the 1949 Act after the section 1A inserted by section 168 above—

**“1B Offence of allowing premises to be used for purpose of unlawful broadcasting.**

- (1) A person who is in charge of any premises which are used for making an unlawful broadcast, or for sending signals for the operation or control of any apparatus used for the purpose of making an unlawful broadcast from any other place, shall be guilty of an offence if—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) he knowingly causes or permits the premises to be so used; or
  - (b) having reasonable cause to believe that the premises are being so used, he fails to take such steps as are reasonable in the circumstances of the case to prevent the premises from being so used.
- (2) For the purposes of this section a person is in charge of any premises if he—
- (a) is the owner or occupier of the premises; or
  - (b) has, or acts or assists in, the management or control of the premises.
- (3) For the purposes of this section a broadcast is unlawful if—
- (a) it is made by means of the use of any station for wireless telegraphy or apparatus for wireless telegraphy in contravention of section 1 of this Act; or
  - (b) the making of the broadcast contravenes any provision of the Marine, &c., Broadcasting (Offences) Act 1967.
- (4) In this section—
- “broadcast” has the same meaning as in the Marine, &c., Broadcasting (Offences) Act 1967;
  - “premises” includes any place and, in particular, includes—
- (a) any vehicle, vessel or aircraft; and
  - (b) any structure or other object (whether movable or otherwise and whether on land or otherwise).”

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C70** Ss. 168-173 extended (with modifications) (29.12.2003) by [The Wireless Telegraphy \(Jersey\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/3196\)](#), arts. 1, 3(2), **Sch. Pt. II**; amendment to earlier affecting provision SI 2003/3196 (27.2.2004) by [The Broadcasting and Communications \(Jersey\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/308\)](#), arts. 1(1), 6(1), **Sch. 2**

**C71** Ss. 168-173 extended (with modifications) (1.6.1994) by [S.I. 1994/1064](#), art. 3(2), **Sch. Pt. II**

**170 Prohibition of acts facilitating unauthorised broadcasting.**

The following section shall be inserted in the 1949 Act after the section 1B inserted by section 169 above—

**“1C Prohibition of acts facilitating unauthorised broadcasting.**

- (1) If a person—
- (a) does any of the acts mentioned in subsection (2) in relation to a broadcasting station by which unauthorised broadcasts are made, and
  - (b) if any knowledge or belief or any circumstances is or are specified in relation to the act, does it with that knowledge or belief or in those circumstances,
- he shall be guilty of an offence.
- (2) The acts referred to in subsection (1) are—
- (a) participating in the management, financing, operation or day-to-day running of the station knowing, or having reasonable cause to believe, that unauthorised broadcasts are made by the station;

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (b) supplying, installing, repairing or maintaining any wireless telegraphy apparatus or any other item knowing, or having reasonable cause to believe, that the apparatus or other item is to be, or is, used for the purpose of facilitating the operation or day-to-day running of the station and that unauthorised broadcasts are made by the station;
  - (c) rendering any other service to any person knowing, or having reasonable cause to believe, that the rendering of that service to that person will facilitate the operation or day-to-day running of the station and that unauthorised broadcasts are so made;
  - (d) supplying a film or sound recording knowing, or having reasonable cause to believe, that an unauthorised broadcast of the film or recording is to be so made;
  - (e) making a literary, dramatic or musical work knowing, or having reasonable cause to believe, that an unauthorised broadcast of the work is to be so made;
  - (f) making an artistic work knowing, or having reasonable cause to believe, that an unauthorised broadcast including that work is to be so made;
  - (g) doing any of the following acts, namely—
    - (i) participating in an unauthorised broadcast made by the station, being actually present as an announcer, as a performer or one of the performers concerned in an entertainment given, or as the deliverer of a speech;
    - (ii) advertising, or inviting another to advertise, by means of an unauthorised broadcast made by the station; or
    - (iii) publishing the times or other details of any unauthorised broadcasts made by the station or (otherwise than by publishing such details) publishing an advertisement of matter calculated to promote the station (whether directly or indirectly),
 knowing, or having reasonable cause to believe, that unauthorised broadcasts are made by the station.
- (3) In any proceedings against a person for an offence under this section consisting in the supplying of any thing or the rendering of any service, it shall be a defence for him to prove that he was obliged, under or by virtue of any enactment, to supply that thing or render that service.
- (4) If, by means of an unauthorised broadcast made by a broadcasting station, it is stated, suggested or implied that any entertainment of which a broadcast is so made has been supplied by, or given at the expense of, a person, then for the purposes of this section he shall, unless he proves that it was not so supplied or given, be deemed thereby to have advertised.
- (5) Section 46 of the Consumer Protection Act 1987 shall have effect for the purpose of construing references in this section to the supply of any thing as it has effect for the purpose of construing references in that Act to the supply of any goods.
- (6) In this section—  
     “broadcast” has the same meaning as in the Marine, &c., Broadcasting (Offences) Act 1967;

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

“broadcasting station” means any business or other operation (whether or not in the nature of a commercial venture) which is engaged in the making of broadcasts;

“film”, “sound recording”, “literary, dramatic or musical work” and “artistic work” have the same meaning as in Part I of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988;

“speech” includes lecture, address and sermon; and

“unauthorised broadcast” means a broadcast made by means of the use of a station for wireless telegraphy or wireless telegraphy apparatus in contravention of section 1 of this Act.”

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C70** Ss. 168-173 extended (with modifications) (29.12.2003) by [The Wireless Telegraphy \(Jersey\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/3196\)](#), arts. 1, 3(2), [Sch. Pt. II](#); amendment to earlier affecting provision SI 2003/3196 (27.2.2004) by [The Broadcasting and Communications \(Jersey\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/308\)](#), arts. 1(1), 6(1), [Sch. 2](#)

**C72** Ss. 168-173 extended (with modifications) (1.6.1994) by [S.I. 1994/1064](#), art. 3(2), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

**171 Amendments of the Marine, &c., Broadcasting (Offences) Act 1967.**

The <sup>M26</sup>Marine, &c., Broadcasting (Offences) Act 1967 shall have effect subject to the amendments specified in Schedule 16 (which include amendments that impose further restrictions on broadcasting at sea and on acts facilitating such broadcasting).

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C70** Ss. 168-173 extended (with modifications) (29.12.2003) by [The Wireless Telegraphy \(Jersey\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/3196\)](#), arts. 1, 3(2), [Sch. Pt. II](#); amendment to earlier affecting provision SI 2003/3196 (27.2.2004) by [The Broadcasting and Communications \(Jersey\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/308\)](#), arts. 1(1), 6(1), [Sch. 2](#)

**C73** Ss. 168-173 extended (with modifications) (1.6.1994) by [S.I. 1994/1064](#), art. 3(2), [Sch. Pt. II](#)

**Marginal Citations**

**M26** 1967 c. 41.

**172 Amendments of provisions of 1949 Act relating to penalties and forfeiture.**

(1) Section 14 of the 1949 Act (penalties and legal proceedings) shall be amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1), the following paragraphs shall be inserted before paragraph (a)—

- “(aa) any offence under section 1(1) of this Act other than one falling within subsection (1A)(a) of this section;
- (ab) any offence under section 1A of this Act other than one falling within subsection (1A)(aa) of this section;
- (ac) any offence under section 1B or 1C of this Act;”.

(3) In subsection (1A), the following paragraph shall be inserted after paragraph (a)—

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

“(aa) any offence under section 1A of this Act committed in relation to any wireless telegraphy apparatus not designed or adapted for emission (as opposed to reception);”.

(4) The following subsections shall be substituted for subsection (3)—

“(3) Where a person is convicted of —

- (a) an offence under this Act consisting in any contravention of any of the provisions of Part I of this Act in relation to any station for wireless telegraphy or any wireless telegraphy apparatus (including an offence under section 1B or 1C of this Act) or in the use of any apparatus for the purpose of interfering with any wireless telegraphy;
- (b) any offence under section 12A of this Act;
- (c) any offence under the Marine, &c., Broadcasting (Offences) Act 1967; or
- (d) any offence under this Act which is an offence under section 7 of the Wireless Telegraphy Act 1967 (whether as originally enacted or as substituted by section 77 of the Telecommunications Act 1984),

the court may, in addition to any other penalty, order such of the following things to be forfeited to the Secretary of State as the court considers appropriate, that is to say—

- (i) any vehicle, vessel or aircraft, or any structure or other object, which was used in connection with the commission of the offence;
- (ii) any wireless telegraphy apparatus or other apparatus in relation to which the offence was committed or which was used in connection with the commission of it;
- (iii) any wireless telegraphy apparatus or other apparatus not falling within paragraph (ii) above which was, at the time of the commission of the offence, in the possession or under the control of the person convicted of the offence and was intended to be used (whether or not by that person) in connection with the making of any broadcast or other transmission that would contravene section 1 of this Act or any provision of the Marine, &c., Broadcasting (Offences) Act 1967.

(3AA) The power conferred by virtue of subsection (3)(a) above does not apply in a case where the offence is any such offence as is mentioned in subsection (1A) (a) or (aa) above.

(3AB) References in subsection (3)(ii) or (iii) above to apparatus other than wireless telegraphy apparatus include references to—

- (a) recordings;
- (b) equipment designed or adapted for use—
  - (i) in making recordings; or
  - (ii) in reproducing from recordings any sounds or visual images;
 and
- (c) equipment not falling within paragraphs (a) and (b) above but connected, directly or indirectly, to wireless telegraphy apparatus.”

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (5) In subsection (3E), for the words from “(whether” to “provision” there shall be substituted “, shall be treated as an offence committed under the same provision, and at the same time,”.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C70** Ss. 168-173 extended (with modifications) (29.12.2003) by [The Wireless Telegraphy \(Jersey\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/3196\)](#), arts. 1, 3(2), **Sch. Pt. II**; amendment to earlier affecting provision SI 2003/3196 (27.2.2004) by [The Broadcasting and Communications \(Jersey\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/308\)](#), arts. 1(1), 6(1), **Sch. 2**
- C74** Ss. 168-173 extended (with modifications) (1.6.1994) by [S.I. 1994/1064](#), art. 3(2), **Sch. Pt. II**

**173 Extension of search and seizure powers in relation to unlawful broadcasting etc.**

- (1) In subsection (1) of section 15 of the 1949 Act (entry and search of premises)—
- after “Act” there shall be inserted “ or under the Marine, &c., Broadcasting (Offences) Act 1967 ”; and
  - the words “and named in the warrant,” shall be omitted.
- (2) In subsection (2) of that section, the words “and named in the authorisation” shall be omitted.
- (3) The following subsection shall be inserted after subsection (2) of that section—
- “(2A) Without prejudice to any power exercisable by him apart from this subsection, a person authorised by the Secretary of State or (as the case may be) by the BBC to exercise any power conferred by this section may use reasonable force, if necessary, in the exercise of that power.”
- (4) In subsection (1)(b) of section 79 of the <sup>M27</sup>Telecommunications Act 1984 (seizure of apparatus and other property used in committing certain offences connected with wireless telegraphy), the following paragraphs shall be inserted after “reception);”—
- “(ba) any offence under section 5(b) of that Act;
  - “(bb) any offence under the Marine, &c., Broadcasting (Offences) Act 1967;”.
- (5) In subsection (2) of that section—
- for “the person or persons named in it” there shall be substituted “ any person authorised by the Secretary of State to exercise the power conferred by this subsection ”; and
  - the words “or them” shall be omitted.
- (6) The following subsection shall be inserted after subsection (4) of that section—
- “(4A) Without prejudice to any power exercisable by him apart from this subsection, a person authorised by the Secretary of State to exercise any power conferred by this section may use reasonable force, if necessary, in the exercise of that power.”

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C70** Ss. 168-173 extended (with modifications) (29.12.2003) by [The Wireless Telegraphy \(Jersey\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/3196\)](#), arts. 1, 3(2), **Sch. Pt. II**; amendment to earlier affecting provision SI 2003/3196 (27.2.2004) by [The Broadcasting and Communications \(Jersey\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/308\)](#), arts. 1(1), 6(1), **Sch. 2**
- C75** Ss. 168-173 extended (with modifications) (1.6.1994) by [S.I. 1994/1064](#), art. 3(2), **Sch. Pt. II**

**Marginal Citations**

**M27** 1984 c. 12.

**174 Application of Part VIII to Isle of Man and Channel Islands.**

Section 20(3) of the 1949 Act and section 10 of the <sup>M28</sup>Marine, &c., Broadcasting (Offences) Act 1967 (power to extend provisions to the Isle of Man and Channel Islands) shall extend respectively to the provisions of this Part amending each of those Acts.

**Marginal Citations**

**M28** 1967 c. 41.

**PART IX**

COPYRIGHT AND RELATED MATTERS

**175 Use as of right of sound recordings in broadcasts and cable programme services.**

- (1) In Chapter VII of Part I of the <sup>M29</sup>Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 (copyright licensing) there shall be inserted after section 135—

*“ Use as of right of sound recordings in broadcasts and cable programme services*

**135A Circumstances in which right available.**

- (1) Section 135C applies to the inclusion in a broadcast or cable programme service of any sound recordings if—
- (a) a licence to include those recordings in the broadcast or cable programme service could be granted by a licensing body or such a body could procure the grant of a licence to do so,
  - (b) the condition in subsection (2) or (3) applies, and
  - (c) the person including those recordings in the broadcast or cable programme service has complied with section 135B.
- (2) Where the person including the recordings in the broadcast or cable programme service does not hold a licence to do so, the condition is that the licensing body refuses to grant, or procure the grant of, such a licence, being a licence—



---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (a) whose terms as to payment for including the recordings in the broadcast or cable programme service would be acceptable to him or comply with an order of the Copyright Tribunal under section 135D relating to such a licence or any scheme under which it would be granted, and
  - (b) allowing unlimited needletime or such needletime as he has demanded.
- (3) Where he holds a licence to include the recordings in the broadcast or cable programme service, the condition is that the terms of the licence limit needletime and the licensing body refuses to substitute or procure the substitution of terms allowing unlimited needletime or such needletime as he has demanded, or refuses to do so on terms that fall within subsection (2)(a).
- (4) The references in subsection (2) to refusing to grant, or procure the grant of, a licence, and in subsection (3) to refusing to substitute or procure the substitution of terms, include failing to do so within a reasonable time of being asked.
- (5) In the group of sections from this section to section 135G—  
“needletime” means the time in any period (whether determined as a number of hours in the period or a proportion of the period, or otherwise) in which any recordings may be included in a broadcast or cable programme service;  
“sound recording” does not include a film sound track when accompanying a film.
- (6) In sections 135B to 135G, “terms of payment” means terms as to payment for including sound recordings in a broadcast or cable programme service.

### **135B Notice of intention to exercise right.**

- (1) A person intending to avail himself of the right conferred by section 135C must—
- (a) give notice to the licensing body of his intention to exercise the right, asking the body to propose terms of payment, and
  - (b) after receiving the proposal or the expiry of a reasonable period, give reasonable notice to the licensing body of the date on which he proposes to begin exercising that right, and the terms of payment in accordance with which he intends to do so.
- (2) Where he has a licence to include the recordings in a broadcast or cable programme service, the date specified in a notice under subsection (1)(b) must not be sooner than the date of expiry of that licence except in a case falling within section 135A(3).
- (3) Before the person intending to avail himself of the right begins to exercise it, he must—
- (a) give reasonable notice to the Copyright Tribunal of his intention to exercise the right, and of the date on which he proposes to begin to do so, and
  - (b) apply to the Tribunal under section 135D to settle the terms of payment.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

### **135C Conditions for exercise of right.**

- (1) A person who, on or after the date specified in a notice under section 135B(1)(b), includes in a broadcast or cable programme service any sound recordings in circumstances in which this section applies, and who—
  - (a) complies with any reasonable condition, notice of which has been given to him by the licensing body, as to inclusion in the broadcast or cable programme service of those recordings,
  - (b) provides that body with such information about their inclusion in the broadcast or cable programme service as it may reasonably require, and
  - (c) makes the payments to the licensing body that are required by this section,

shall be in the same position as regards infringement of copyright as if he had at all material times been the holder of a licence granted by the owner of the copyright in question.
- (2) Payments are to be made at not less than quarterly intervals in arrears.
- (3) The amount of any payment is that determined in accordance with any order of the Copyright Tribunal under section 135D or, if no such order has been made—
  - (a) in accordance with any proposal for terms of payment made by the licensing body pursuant to a request under section 135B, or
  - (b) where no proposal has been so made or the amount determined in accordance with the proposal so made is unreasonably high, in accordance with the terms of payment notified to the licensing body under section 135B(1)(b).
- (4) Where this section applies to the inclusion in a broadcast or cable programme service of any sound recordings, it does so in place of any licence.

### **135D Applications to settle payments.**

- (1) On an application to settle the terms of payment, the Copyright Tribunal shall consider the matter and make such order as it may determine to be reasonable in the circumstances.
- (2) An order under subsection (1) has effect from the date the applicant begins to exercise the right conferred by section 135C and any necessary repayments, or further payments, shall be made in respect of amounts that have fallen due.

### **135E References etc. about conditions, information and other terms.**

- (1) A person exercising the right conferred by section 135C, or who has given notice to the Copyright Tribunal of his intention to do so, may refer to the Tribunal—
  - (a) any question whether any condition as to the inclusion in a broadcast or cable programme service of sound recordings, notice of which has been given to him by the licensing body in question, is a reasonable condition, or

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

(b) any question whether any information is information which the licensing body can reasonably require him to provide.

(2) On a reference under this section, the Tribunal shall consider the matter and make such order as it may determine to be reasonable in the circumstances.

### **135F Application for review of order.**

(1) A person exercising the right conferred by section 135C or the licensing body may apply to the Copyright Tribunal to review any order under section 135D or 135E.

(2) An application shall not be made, except with the special leave of the Tribunal—

(a) within twelve months from the date of the order, or of the decision on a previous application under this section, or

(b) if the order was made so as to be in force for fifteen months or less, or as a result of a decision on a previous application is due to expire within fifteen months of that decision, until the last three months before the expiry date.

(3) On the application the Tribunal shall consider the matter and make such order confirming or varying the original order as it may determine to be reasonable in the circumstances.

(4) An order under this section has effect from the date on which it is made or such later date as may be specified by the Tribunal.

### **135G Factors to be taken into account.**

(1) In determining what is reasonable on an application or reference under section 135D or 135E, or on reviewing any order under section 135F, the Copyright Tribunal shall—

(a) have regard to the terms of any orders which it has made in the case of persons in similar circumstances exercising the right conferred by section 135C, and

(b) exercise its powers so as to secure that there is no unreasonable discrimination between persons exercising that right against the same licensing body.

(2) In settling the terms of payment under section 135D, the Tribunal shall not be guided by any order it has made under any enactment other than that section.

(3) Section 134 (factors to be taken into account: retransmissions) applies on an application or reference under sections 135D to 135F as it applies on an application or reference relating to a licence.”

(2) In section 149 of that Act (jurisdiction of the Copyright Tribunal), after paragraph (c) there shall be inserted—

“(cc) section 135D or 135E (application or reference with respect to use as of right of sound recordings in broadcasts or cable programme services);”.

(3) In section 179 of that Act (index of defined expressions)—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) in the appropriate places in alphabetical order there shall be inserted—
  - “needletime section 135A”, and
  - “terms of payment section 135A”, and
- (b) in the entry for sound recordings, for “section 5” there shall be substituted “sections 5 and 135A”.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M29** 1988 c. 48.

### **176 Duty to provide advance information about programmes.**

- (1) A person providing a programme service to which this section applies must make available in accordance with this section information relating to the programmes to be included in the service to any person (referred to in this section and Schedule 17 to this Act as “the publisher”) wishing to publish in the United Kingdom any such information.
- (2) The duty imposed by subsection (1) is to make available information as to the titles of the programmes which are to be, or may be, included in the service on any date, and the time of their inclusion, to any publisher who has asked the person providing the programme service to make such information available to him and reasonably requires it.
- (3) Information to be made available to a publisher under this section is to be made available as soon after it has been prepared as is reasonably practicable but, in any event—
  - (a) not later than when it is made available to any other publisher, and
  - (b) in the case of information in respect of all the programmes to be included in the service in any period of seven days, not later than the beginning of the preceding period of fourteen days, or such other number of days as may be prescribed by the Secretary of State by order.
- (4) An order under subsection (3) shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- (5) The duty imposed by subsection (1) is not satisfied by providing the information on terms, other than terms as to copyright, prohibiting or restricting publication in the United Kingdom by the publisher.
- (6) Schedule 17 applies to any information or future information which the person providing a programme service to which this section applies is or may be required to make available under this section.
- (7) For the purposes of this section and that Schedule, the following table shows the programme services to which the section and Schedule apply and the persons who provide them or are to be treated as providing them.

---

**Programme service**

**Provider of service**

*Services other than services under the Act*

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

Television and national radio services provided by the BBC for reception in the United Kingdom      The BBC

***Services under the Act***

Television programme services subject to <sup>F315</sup>regulation by OFCOM]      The person licensed to provide the service

<sup>F316</sup>The public television services of the Welsh Authority (within the meaning of Part 2 of Schedule 12 to the Communications Act 2003)]      The Authority

Any national service (see <sup>F317</sup>section 126(1)) subject to regulation by <sup>F318</sup>OFCOM]<sup>F319</sup>, any simulcast radio service (within the meaning of Part II of the Broadcasting Act 1996), and any national digital sound programme service (within the meaning of that Part of that Act) subject to regulation by <sup>F318</sup>OFCOM]]      The person licensed to provide the service

***Services provided during interim period only***

Television broadcasting services provided by the Independent Television Commission in accordance with Schedule 11, other than Channel 4      The programme contractor

Channel 4, as so provided      The body corporate referred to in section 12(2) of the Broadcasting Act 1981

---

(8) This section does not require any information to be given about any advertisement.

**Textual Amendments**

- F315** Words in s. 176(7) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 60(a) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F316** Words in s. 176(7) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 60(b) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F317** Words in s. 176(7) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 60(c) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F318** Words in s. 176(7) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 60(d) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

## PART X

### MISCELLANEOUS AND GENERAL

#### *Foreign satellite services*

#### 177 Orders proscribing unacceptable foreign satellite services.

- (1) Subject to the following provisions of this section, the Secretary of State may make an order proscribing a foreign satellite service for the purposes of section 178.
- (2) If [<sup>F320</sup>OFCOM consider that the quality of any ] foreign satellite service which is brought to their attention is unacceptable and that the service should be the subject of an order under this section, they shall notify to the Secretary of State details of the service and their reasons why they consider such an order should be made.
- (3) [<sup>F321</sup>OFCOM] shall not consider a foreign satellite service to be unacceptable for the purposes of subsection (2) unless they are satisfied that there is repeatedly contained in programmes included in the service matter which offends against good taste or decency or is likely to encourage or incite to crime or to lead to disorder or to be offensive to public feeling.
- (4) Where the Secretary of State has been notified under subsection (2), he shall not make an order under this section unless he is satisfied that the making of the order—
  - (a) is in the public interest; and
  - (b) is compatible with any international obligations of the United Kingdom.
- (5) An order under this section—
  - (a) may make such provision for the purpose of identifying a particular foreign satellite service as the Secretary of State thinks fit; and
  - (b) shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.
- [<sup>F322</sup>(6) In this section and section 178—
  - [<sup>F323</sup>“foreign satellite service” means—
    - (a) a service which is provided by a person who is not for the purposes of Council Directive 89/552/EEC under the jurisdiction of the United Kingdom and which consists wholly or mainly in the transmission by satellite of television programmes which are capable of being received in the United Kingdom, or
    - (b) a service which consists wholly or mainly in the transmission by satellite from a place outside the United Kingdom of sound programmes which are capable of being received in the United Kingdom;]

[<sup>F324</sup> ...]

#### Textual Amendments

**F320** Words in s. 177(2) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 61\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F321** Words in s. 177(3) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 61\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F322** S. 177(6) substituted (11.7.1997) by [S.I. 1997/1682, reg. 2, Sch. para. 13](#)

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**F323** S. 177(6): definition of “foreign satellite service” substituted (30.12.1998) by S.I. 1998/3196, reg. 2, **Sch. para. 5**

**F324** Words in s. 177(6) repealed (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21)**, s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 61(4), Sch. 19(1)** (with **Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), **Sch. 1** (with art. 11)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C76** S. 177: transfer of functions (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21)**, s. 411(2), **Sch. 1 para. 6** (with **Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), **Sch. 1** (with art. 11)

**178 Offence of supporting proscribed foreign satellite services.**

- (1) This section applies to any foreign satellite service which is proscribed for the purposes of this section by virtue of an order under section 177; and references in this section to a proscribed service are references to any such service.
- (2) Any person who in the United Kingdom does any of the acts specified in subsection (3) shall be guilty of an offence.
- (3) Those acts are—
  - (a) supplying any equipment or other goods for use in connection with the operation or day-to-day running of a proscribed service;
  - (b) supplying, or offering to supply, programme material to be included in any programme transmitted in the provision of a proscribed service;
  - (c) arranging for, or inviting, any other person to supply programme material to be so included;
  - (d) advertising, by means of programmes transmitted in the provision of a proscribed service, goods supplied by him or services provided by him;
  - (e) publishing the times or other details of any programmes which are to be transmitted in the provision of a proscribed service or (otherwise than by publishing such details) publishing an advertisement of matter calculated to promote a proscribed service (whether directly or indirectly);
  - (f) supplying or offering to supply any decoding equipment which is designed or adapted to be used primarily for the purpose of enabling the reception of programmes transmitted in the provision of a proscribed service.
- (4) In any proceedings against a person for an offence under this section, it is a defence for him to prove that he did not know, and had no reasonable cause to suspect, that the service in connection with which the act was done was a proscribed service.
- (5) A person who is guilty of an offence under this section shall be liable—
  - (a) on summary conviction, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum, or both;
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or to a fine, or both.
- (6) For the purposes of this section a person exposing decoding equipment for supply or having such equipment in his possession for supply shall be deemed to offer to supply it.
- (7) Section 46 of the <sup>M30</sup>Consumer Protection Act 1987 shall have effect for the purpose of construing references in this section to the supply of any thing as it has effect for the purpose of construing references in that Act to the supply of any goods.



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (8) In this section “programme material” includes—
- (a) a film (within the meaning of Part I of the <sup>M31</sup>Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988);
  - (b) any other recording; and
  - (c) any advertisement or other advertising material.

#### Marginal Citations

**M30** 1987 c. 43.

**M31** 1988 c. 48.

### *Unauthorised decoders*

#### **179 Unauthorised decoders for encrypted services etc.**

<sup>F325</sup>(1) .....

- (2) In section 299 of the Act of 1988 (fraudulent reception of programmes broadcast from countries or territories outside the United Kingdom)—
- (a) subsection (2) shall cease to have effect; and
  - (b) in subsection (5), after “297” there shall be inserted “, 297A ”.

#### Textual Amendments

**F325** S. 179(1) repealed (28.5.2000) by S.I. 2000/1175, art. 4

### *Television licensing*

#### **180 Transfer to BBC of functions connected with television licences.**

- (1) The <sup>M32</sup>Wireless Telegraphy Act 1949 (“the 1949 Act”) shall have effect subject to the amendments specified in Part I of Schedule 18 to this Act (by virtue of which functions of the Secretary of State as respects the issue and renewal of television licences are transferred to the BBC).
- [<sup>F326</sup>(2) Refunds of sums paid to the BBC under subsection (1) of section 2 of the 1949 Act (fees and charges for television licences) may be made by the BBC out of sums received under that subsection in such cases or classes of case as they may determine.]
- (3) Except so far as required for the making of refunds under subsection (2) above, sums received by the BBC under section 2(1) of the 1949 Act shall be paid into the Consolidated Fund.
- (4) Part I of the <sup>M33</sup>Wireless Telegraphy Act 1967 (obtaining of information as to sale and hire of television sets) shall have effect subject to the amendments specified in Part II of Schedule 18 to this Act (by virtue of which all of the functions of the Secretary of State under that Part of that Act, apart from his power to make regulations under section 2(7) or 6(1), are transferred to the BBC).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

#### Textual Amendments

**F326** S. 180(2) substituted (18.6.1998) by S.I. 1998 c. 6, ss. 7, 10(2), **Sch. 1 para. 4**

#### Marginal Citations

**M32** 1949 c. 54.

**M33** 1967 c. 72.

### 181 Certain apparatus to be deemed to be apparatus for wireless telegraphy.

- (1) Any apparatus which—
- is connected to the telecommunication system by means of which a relevant cable service is provided, and
  - is so connected for the purpose of enabling any person to receive any programmes included in that service by means of the reception and immediate re-transmission of programmes included in a television broadcasting service,
- shall be deemed for the purposes of the 1949 Act to be apparatus for wireless telegraphy.
- (2) Any such apparatus shall, in addition, be deemed for the purposes of—
- section 1(7) of the 1949 Act (as amended by Part I of Schedule 18 to this Act), and
  - any regulations made by the Secretary of State for the purposes of that provision under section 2 of that Act,
- to be television receiving apparatus.
- (3) In this section “relevant cable service” means a service provided by any person to the extent that it consists in the use of a telecommunication system (whether run by him or by any other person) for the purpose of the delivery, otherwise than by wireless telegraphy, of programmes included in one or more television broadcasting services, where such programmes are so delivered—
- for simultaneous reception at two or more places in the United Kingdom, or
  - for reception at any place in the United Kingdom for the purpose of being presented there either to members of the public or to any group of persons.
- (4) In this section—
- “the 1949 Act” means the <sup>M34</sup>Wireless Telegraphy Act 1949;
- “connected” has the same meaning as in the <sup>M35</sup>Telecommunications Act 1984;
- “television broadcasting service” means a television broadcasting service within the meaning of Part I of this Act, whether provided by the holder of a licence under that Part or by the BBC or the Welsh Authority or in accordance with Part II of Schedule 11 to this Act.

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C77** S. 181 modified (temp.) (8.12.2003) by **The Office of Communications Act 2002 (Commencement No. 3) and Communications Act 2003 (Commencement No. 2) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/3142), art. 10(3)** (with art. 11)

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Marginal Citations**

- M34 1949 c. 54.
- M35 1984 c. 12.

*Listed events*

<sup>F327</sup>182 .

.....

**Textual Amendments**

- F327 S. 182 repealed (1.10.1996) by 1996 c. 55, ss. 105(2), 148(2), Sch. 11 Pt. I (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, Sch. 1

*Gaelic television programmes*

**183 Financing of programmes in Gaelic out of Gaelic Television Fund.**

- (1) The Secretary of State—
  - (a) may, for the financial year beginning with 1st April 1991, and
  - (b) shall, for each subsequent financial year,
 pay to [<sup>F328</sup>OFCOM] such amount as he may, with the approval of the Treasury, determine to be appropriate for the purposes of this section.
- (2) Any amount received by [<sup>F328</sup>OFCOM] under subsection (1) shall be carried by them to the credit of a fund established [<sup>F329</sup>by the Independent Television Commission under this section and] known as the [<sup>F330</sup>Gaelic Broadcasting Fund] (and any such amount shall accordingly not be regarded as forming part of the revenues of [<sup>F328</sup>OFCOM]).
- (3) The Fund shall be under the management of a body established for the purposes of this section <sup>F331</sup>...

<sup>F332</sup>(3A) .....

<sup>F333</sup>(3B) The functions of the Service shall be to secure that a wide and diverse range of high quality programmes in Gaelic are broadcast or otherwise transmitted so as to be available to persons in Scotland.

- (4A) In carrying out their functions, the Service may finance, or engage in, any of the following—
  - (a) the making of programmes in Gaelic with a view to those programmes being broadcast or otherwise transmitted so as to be available to persons in Scotland;
  - (b) the provision of training for persons employed, or to be employed, in connection with the making of programmes in Gaelic to be so broadcast or otherwise transmitted;
  - (c) research into the types of programmes in Gaelic that members of the Gaelic-speaking community would like to be broadcast or otherwise transmitted.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

(4B) But the Service are not to be entitled, for the purpose of carrying out their functions, to provide—

- (a) a Channel 3 service;
- (b) Channel 4;
- (c) Channel 5;
- (d) a national sound broadcasting service;
- (e) a national digital sound programme service; or
- (f) a television multiplex service or a radio multiplex service.]

(5) When making any grant out of the Fund in pursuance of subsection (4) the Committee may impose such conditions as they think fit, including conditions requiring the grant to be repaid in specified circumstances.

<sup>F334</sup>(6) .....

<sup>F334</sup>(7) .....

(8) Any sums required by the Secretary of State under subsection (1) shall be paid out of money provided by Parliament.

[<sup>F335</sup>(9) In this section, section 183A and Schedule 19—

“Channel 3 service”, “Channel 4” and “Channel 5” each has the same meaning as in Part 1;

“national digital sound programme service” has the same meaning as in Part 2 of the Broadcasting Act 1996;

“national sound broadcasting service” means a sound broadcasting service within the meaning of Part 3 which, under subsection (4)(a) of section 245 of the Communications Act 2003, is a national service for the purposes of that section;

“Gaelic” means the Gaelic language as spoken in Scotland;

“programme” includes any item included in a programme service;

“radio multiplex service” has the same meaning as in Part 2 of the Broadcasting Act 1996;

“the Service” means the body established under subsection (3) and known as Seirbheis nam Meadhanan Gàidhlig (the Gaelic Media Service);

“television multiplex service” has the meaning given by section 241(1) of the Communications Act 2003 to a multiplex service within the meaning of Part 1 of the Broadcasting Act 1996;

and a reference to being available to persons in Scotland includes a reference to being available both to persons in Scotland and to others.]

### Textual Amendments

**F328** Words in s. 183 substituted (with effect in accordance with Sch. 15 para. 62(4)(a) of the amending Act) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 62\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 15 para. 62\(4\)\(b\), Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

**F329** Words in s. 183(2) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 62\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 15 para. 62\(4\)\(b\), Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

**F330** Words in s. 183(2) substituted (1.4.1997) by [1996 c. 55, s. 95\(2\)](#); [S.I. 1997/1005, art. 4](#)

**F331** Words in s. 183(3) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

**F332** S. 183(3A) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F333** S. 183(3B)-(4B) substituted for s. 183(4) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 208(3), 411(2)** (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F334** S. 183(6)(7) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F335** S. 183(9) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 208(4), 411(2)** (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

- C78** S. 183: transfer of functions to the Scottish Ministers (1.7.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1750](#), arts. 1, 2, **Sch. 1**; [S.I. 1998/3178](#)
- C79** S. 183: transfer of functions (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), **Sch. 1 para. 7** (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

[<sup>F336</sup>**183A** **Membership of the Gaelic Media Service**

- (1) The Service shall consist of not more than twelve members.
- (2) The members of the Service are to be appointed by OFCOM
- (3) OFCOM must appoint one of the members to be the chairman of the Service.
- (4) The approval of the Secretary of State is required for the appointment of a person as a member of the Service, and for the appointment of a member as their chairman.
- (5) The members of the Service must include—
  - (a) a member nominated by the BBC;
  - (b) a member nominated by Highlands and Islands Enterprise; and
  - (c) a member nominated by Bòrd Gàidhlig na h-Alba (the Gaelic Development Agency).
- (6) When appointing members of the Service, OFCOM must have regard to—
  - (a) the desirability of having members of the Service who are proficient in written and spoken Gaelic; and
  - (b) any guidance issued by the Secretary of State for the purposes of this section.
- (7) OFCOM must secure, so far as practicable, that the membership of the Service is such that the interests of each of the following are adequately represented—
  - (a) the holders of licences to provide regional Channel 3 services for areas wholly in Scotland;
  - (b) the holders of licences to provide regional Channel 3 services in respect of which determinations under section 184(4)(b) are for the time being in force;
  - (c) the independent television and radio production industries in Scotland;
  - (d) other persons and bodies concerned with the promotion and use of the Gaelic language, including those concerned with education in Gaelic and in Gaelic culture.
- (8) Schedule 19 to this Act shall have effect with respect to the Service.
- (9) In this section—
 

“Bòrd Gàidhlig na h-Alba” means the body of that name formed under section 5 of the National Heritage (Scotland) Act 1985;

“regional Channel 3 service” has the same meaning as in Part 1.

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*  
*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

- (10) The Secretary of State may by order amend the reference in subsection (5) to Bòrd Gàidhlig na h-Alba (the Gaelic Development Agency)—
- (a) by substituting a reference to another body formed under section 5 of the National Heritage (Scotland) Act 1985 with functions relating to the promotion of Gaelic; or
  - (b) for the purpose of giving effect to a change to the name of the body referred to in that subsection.
- (11) An order under this section shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F336** S. 183A inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), ss. 209, 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

### 184 Broadcasting of programmes in Gaelic on Channel 3 in Scotland.

- (1) Section 16 shall have effect in relation to any service to which this section applies as if the following requirements were included among those specified in [F337 subsection (1) (a)] of that section, namely—
- (a) that a suitable proportion of the programmes included in the service are programmes in Gaelic other than funded Gaelic productions;
  - (b) that the service includes funded Gaelic productions of which—
    - (i) a suitable proportion are of high quality, and
    - (ii) a suitable proportion are shown at peak viewing times; and
  - (c) that (taking the programmes included in the service in accordance with paragraphs (a) and (b) above as a whole) the service includes a wide range of programmes in Gaelic.
- (2) In subsection (1) above “funded Gaelic productions” means programmes in Gaelic the making of which has been wholly or partly financed out of grants made in pursuance of section 183(4) to the person providing the service.
- (3) [F338 The regulatory regime for a service to which this section applies includes the conditions that OFCOM consider appropriate for] securing that the requirements specified in paragraphs (a) to (c) of subsection (1) above are complied with in relation to the service.
- [F339 (3A) Section 263 of the Communications Act 2003 (regulatory regime) applies in relation to conditions included by virtue of subsection (3) in the regulatory regime for a licensed service as it applies in relation to conditions which are so included by virtue of a provision of Chapter 4 of Part 3 of that Act.]
- (4) This section applies—
- (a) to any regional Channel 3 service that is to be provided for an area the whole of which is in Scotland; and
  - (b) if [F340 OFCOM] determine that it shall so apply, to any regional Channel 3 service that is to be provided for an area the greater part of which is in Scotland.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) In this section “licence” and “regional Channel 3 service” have the same meaning as in Part I of this Act; and subsection (9) of section 183 applies for the purposes of this section.

#### Textual Amendments

- F337** Words in s. 184(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 63\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F338** Words in s. 184(3) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 63\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F339** S. 184(3A) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 63\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F340** Words in s. 184(4)(b) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 63\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C80** S. 184: transfer of functions (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 1 para. 7](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

### *National television archive*

#### **185 Contributions towards maintenance of national television archive.**

- (1) [<sup>F341</sup>OFCOM] shall, for the financial year which includes the commencement of this section and each subsequent financial year, determine an aggregate amount which they consider it would be appropriate for the holders of Channel 3 [<sup>F342</sup>, Channel 4 ] and Channel 5 licences to contribute, in accordance with this section, towards the expenses incurred by the nominated body in connection with the maintenance by it of a national television archive.
- (2) In this section “the nominated body” means such body as may for the time being be nominated by [<sup>F341</sup>OFCOM] for the purposes of this section, being a body which—
- (a) is for the time being a designated body for the purposes of section 75 of the <sup>M36</sup>Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 (recordings for archival purposes), and
  - (b) appears to [<sup>F341</sup>OFCOM] to be in a position to maintain a national television archive.
- (3) A Channel 3 [<sup>F343</sup>, Channel 4 ] or Channel 5 licence shall include conditions requiring the licence holder to pay to [<sup>F341</sup>OFCOM] , in respect of each of the financial years mentioned in subsection (1), such amount as they may notify to him for the purposes of this section, being such proportion of the aggregate amount determined for that year under that subsection as they consider appropriate (and different proportions may be determined in relation to different persons).
- (4) Any amount received by [<sup>F341</sup>OFCOM] by virtue of subsection (3) shall be transmitted by them to the nominated body.
- (5) In this section—
- <sup>F344</sup>  
...



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“Channel 3 licence” and “Channel 5 licence” have the same meaning as in Part I of this Act.

[<sup>F345</sup>“Channel 4 licence” means—

- (a) the licence referred to in section 231(1)(b) of the Communications Act 2003; and
- (b) a licence renewing that licence on the first or any subsequent occasion.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F341** Words in s. 185 substituted (with effect in accordance with Sch. 15 para. 64(2) of the amending Act) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 64\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))
- F342** Words in s. 185(1) inserted (with effect in accordance with s. 297(4) of the amending Act) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 297\(2\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))
- F343** Words in s. 185(3) inserted (with effect in accordance with s. 297(4) of the amending Act) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 297\(2\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))
- F344** Words in s. 185(5) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 64\(1\)\(b\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))
- F345** Words in s. 185(5) inserted (with effect in accordance with s. 297(4) of the amending Act) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 297\(3\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C81** S. 185: transfer of functions (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 8](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

#### Marginal Citations

- M36** 1988 c. 48.

### *Duties of BBC as respects independent productions*

#### <sup>F346</sup>**186 Duty of BBC to include independent productions in their television services.**

.....

#### Textual Amendments

- F346** S. 186 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

#### **187 Information to be furnished by BBC for purposes of reports under section 186.**

- <sup>F347</sup>(1) .....
- <sup>F347</sup>(2) .....
- <sup>F348</sup>(3) .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**Textual Amendments**  
**F347** S. 187(1)(2) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)  
**F348** S. 187(3) repealed (1.4.2003) by [Enterprise Act 2002 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 279, Sch. 25 para. 24(6)(b), **Sch. 26**; S.I. 2003/766, art. 2, **Sch.** (with art. 3) (as amended (20.7.2007) by S.I. 2007/1846, reg. 3(2), Sch.)

*Power to give directions relating to international obligations*

**188 Power to give broadcasting bodies etc. directions relating to international obligations.**

- (1) A body to which this section applies shall carry out any functions which the Secretary of State may by order direct them to carry out for the purpose of enabling Her Majesty’s Government in the United Kingdom to give effect to any international obligations of the United Kingdom.
- (2) This section applies to—
  - (a) the BBC;
  - <sup>F349</sup>(b) .....
  - (c) the Welsh Authority;
  - <sup>F350</sup>(d) .....
  - <sup>F350</sup>(e) .....
- (3) An order under this section shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

**Textual Amendments**  
**F349** S. 188(2)(b) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)  
**F350** S. 188(2)(d)(e) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

*Matters relating to telecommunication systems*

<sup>F351</sup>**189 Sharing of apparatus by operators of telecom- munication systems.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F351** Ss. 189-191 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

<sup>F351</sup>**190 Modification of certain references in Telecom- munications Act licences.**

.....

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**Textual Amendments**

**F351** Ss. 189-191 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with **Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), **Sch. 1** (with art. 11)

**<sup>F351</sup>191 Revocation of class licence to run broadcast relay systems.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F351** Ss. 189-191 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with **Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), **Sch. 1** (with art. 11)

*Application of competition legislation*

**<sup>F352</sup>192 Application of provisions of Fair Trading Act 1973 to broadcasting and telecommunication services.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F352** S. 192 repealed (20.6.2003) by [Enterprise Act 2002 \(c. 40\)](#), s. 279, **Sch. 26**; S.I. 2003/1397, art. 2(1), **Sch.** (with art. 8)

**[<sup>F353</sup>193 Modification of networking arrangements in consequence of competition legislation**

- (1) Where [<sup>F354</sup>the relevant authority] makes a relevant order, the order may also provide for the modification of any networking arrangements to such extent as may appear to the relevant authority to be requisite or expedient for the purpose of giving effect to, or taking account of, any provision made by the order.
- (2) In subsection (1) “relevant order” means—
  - (a) an order under section 75, 83 or 84 of, or paragraph 5, 10 or 11 of Schedule 7 to, the Enterprise Act 2002 where—
    - (i) one or more than one of the enterprises which have, or may have, ceased to be distinct enterprises was engaged in the provision of programmes for broadcasting in regional Channel 3 services; or
    - (ii) one or more than one of the enterprises which will or may cease to be distinct enterprises is engaged in the provision of such programmes;or
  - (b) an order under section 160 or 161 of that Act where the feature, or combination of features, of the market in the United Kingdom for goods or services which prevents, restricts or distorts competition relates to the provision of programmes for broadcasting in regional Channel 3 services.

[<sup>F355</sup>(2A) In subsection (1), “relevant authority” means—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) in relation to a relevant order falling within subsection (2)(a), the Office of Fair Trading, the Competition Commission or (as the case may be) the Secretary of State;
  - (b) in relation to a relevant order falling within subsection (2)(b), the Office of Fair Trading, the Competition Commission, the Secretary of State or (as the case may be) OFCOM.]
- (3) Expressions used in subsection (2) and in Part 3 or (as the case may be) Part 4 of the Enterprise Act 2002 have the same meanings in that subsection as in that Part.
- (4) In this section —  
 “networking arrangements” means any such arrangements as are mentioned in [F356section 290(4) of the Communications Act 2003]; and  
 “regional Channel 3 service” has the meaning given by section 14(6) above.]

**Textual Amendments**

**F353** S. 193 substituted (20.6.2003) by [Enterprise Act 2002 \(c. 40\), s. 279, Sch. 9 para. 6](#); S.I. 2003/1397, art. 2(1), Sch.

**F354** Words in s. 193(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 65\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**F355** S. 193(2A) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 65\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**F356** Words in s. 193(4) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 65\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C82** S. 193(2)(a) extended (20.6.2003) by [The Enterprise Act 2002 \(Protection of Legitimate Interests\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1592\), art. 1\(1\), Sch. 4 para. 9](#)

F357 **194** .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F357** S. 194 repealed (1.3.2000) by [S.I. 2000/311, art. 26\(2\)](#)

[F358 **194** **Modification of Restrictive Trade Practices Act 1976 in its application to agreements relating to Channel 3 news provision.**

- (1) In this section a “relevant agreement” means an agreement—
- (a) which is made between all holders of regional Channel 3 licences for securing the appointment by them, in accordance with conditions included in their licences by virtue of [F359section 280 of the Communications Act 2003], of a single body corporate to be the appointed news provider for the purposes of [F360that section], or
  - (b) which is made between them and the body corporate appointed to be the appointed news provider for the purposes of [F360that section] for purposes connected with the appointment.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- [ If, having sought the advice of the [F362OFT][F363 and OFCOM], it appears to the
- <sup>F361</sup>(2) Secretary of State, in relation to some or all of the provisions of a relevant agreement, that the conditions mentioned in subsection (3) are satisfied, he may make a declaration to that effect.
- (3) The conditions are that—
- (a) the provisions in question do not have, and are not intended or likely to have, to any significant extent the effect of restricting, distorting or preventing competition; or
  - (b) the effect of restricting, distorting or preventing competition which the provisions in question do have or are intended or are likely to have, is not greater than is necessary—
    - (i) in the case of a relevant agreement falling within subsection (1)(a), for securing the appointment by holders of regional Channel 3 licences of a single body corporate to be the appointed news provider for the purposes of [F364section 280 of the Communications Act 2003], or
    - (ii) in the case of a relevant agreement falling within subsection (1)(b), for compliance by them with conditions included in their licences by virtue of [F365that section of that Act of 2003].
- (4) If the Secretary of State makes a declaration under this section, the Chapter I prohibition does not apply to the agreement to the extent to which the agreement consists of provisions to which the declaration relates.
- (5) If the Secretary of State is satisfied that there has been a material change of circumstances, he may—
- (a) revoke a declaration made under this section, if he considers that the grounds on which it was made no longer exist;
  - (b) vary such a declaration, if he considers that there are grounds for making a different declaration; or
  - (c) make a declaration, even though he has notified the [F362OFT][F366 or OFCOM or both of them] of his intention not to do so.
- (6) If the Secretary of State makes, varies or revokes a declaration under this section, he must notify the [F362OFT][F367 and OFCOM] of his decision.
- (7) [F368Neither the OFT nor OFCOM may] exercise any Chapter III powers in respect of a relevant agreement, unless—
- <sup>F369</sup>(a) the Secretary of State has been notified by the OFT or (as the case may be) by OFCOM of its or their intention to do so; and]
  - (b) the Secretary of State—
    - (i) has notified the [F362OFT][F370 and OFCOM] that he has not made a declaration in respect of the agreement, or provisions of the agreement, under this section and that he does not intend to make such a declaration; or
    - (ii) has revoked a declaration under this section and a period of six months beginning with the date on which the revocation took effect has expired.
- (8) [F371Where the OFT or OFCOM is or are proposing to exercise any Chapter III powers in respect of a relevant agreement, it or they must give the Secretary of State particulars of the agreement and such other information—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) it considers or (as the case may be) they consider will assist] the Secretary of State to decide whether to exercise his powers under this section; or
- (b) as the Secretary of State may request.

(9) In this section–

“the Chapter I prohibition” means the prohibition imposed by section 2(1) of the Competition Act 1998;

“Chapter III powers” means the powers [<sup>F372</sup>of the OFT and of OFCOM under] Chapter III of Part I of that Act so far as they relate to the Chapter I prohibition;

[<sup>F373</sup>“OFT” means the Office of Fair Trading;]

<sup>F374</sup>

“regional Channel 3 licence” has the same meaning as in Part I;

and expressions used in this section which are also used in Part I of the Competition Act 1998 are to be interpreted in the same way as for the purposes of that Part of that Act.

- (10) In this section references to an agreement are to be read as applying equally to, or in relation to, a decision or concerted practice.
- (11) In the application of this section to decisions and concerted practices, references to provisions of an agreement are to be read as references to elements of a decision or concerted practice.]]

#### Textual Amendments

- F358** Shoulder heading and s. 194A inserted (24.7.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 77(1)(2) (with s. 43(1)(6))
- F359** Words in s. 194A(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), ss. 372(2)(a), 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F360** Words in s. 194A(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), ss. 372(2)(b), 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F361** S. 194A(2)-(11) substituted (1.3.2000) by 1998 c. 41, s. 3(1)(b), Sch. 2 Pt. III para. 4(2); S.I. 2000/344, art. 2, Sch.
- F362** Word in s. 194A substituted (1.4.2003) by Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40), s. 279, Sch. 25 para. 24(7)(a); S.I. 2003/766, art. 2, Sch. (with art. 3) (as amended (20.7.2007) by S.I. 2007/1846, reg. 3(2), Sch.)
- F363** Words in s. 194A(2) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), ss. 372(3), 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F364** Words in s. 194A(3)(b) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), ss. 372(4)(a), 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F365** Words in s. 194A(3)(b) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), ss. 372(4)(b), 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F366** Words in s. 194A(5)(c) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), ss. 372(5), 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F367** Words in s. 194A(6) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), ss. 372(3), 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F368** Words in s. 194A(7) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), ss. 372(6)(a), 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F369** S. 194A(7)(a) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), ss. 372(6)(b), 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F370** Words in s. 194A(7)(b)(i) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), ss. 372(3), 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F371** Words in s. 194A(8) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 372(7)**, 411(2) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), [art. 3\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))
- F372** Words in s. 194A(9) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 372(8)**, 411(2) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), [art. 3\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))
- F373** Words in s. 194A(9) inserted (1.4.2003) by [Enterprise Act 2002 \(c. 40\)](#), [s. 279](#), **Sch. 25 para. 24(7)(d)(ii)**; [S.I. 2003/766](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch.](#) (with [art. 3](#)) (as amended (20.7.2007) by [S.I. 2007/1846](#), [reg. 3\(2\)](#), [Sch.](#))
- F374** Words in s. 194A(9) repealed (1.4.2003) by [Enterprise Act 2002 \(c. 40\)](#), [s. 279](#), **Sch. 25 para. 24(7)(d)(i)**, **Sch. 26**; [S.I. 2003/766](#), [art. 2](#), [Sch.](#) (with [art. 3](#)) (as amended (20.7.2007) by [S.I. 2007/1846](#), [reg. 3\(2\)](#), [Sch.](#))

### General

#### 195 Offences by bodies corporate.

- (1) Where a body corporate is guilty of an offence under this Act and that offence is proved to have been committed with the consent or connivance of, or to be attributable to any neglect on the part of, any director, manager, secretary or other similar officer of the body corporate or any person who was purporting to act in any such capacity, then he, as well as the body corporate, shall be guilty of that offence and shall be liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.
- (2) Where the affairs of a body corporate are managed by its members, subsection (1) above shall apply in relation to the acts and defaults of a member in connection with his functions of management as if he were a director of the body corporate.

#### 196 Entry and search of premises.

- (1) If a justice of the peace is satisfied by information on oath—
  - (a) that there is reasonable ground for suspecting that an offence under section 13<sup>F375</sup> ... or 97 has been or is being committed on any premises specified in the information, and
  - (b) that evidence of the commission of the offence is to be found on those premises,

he may grant a search warrant conferring power on any person or persons authorised in that behalf by [<sup>F376</sup>OFCOM] to enter and search the premises specified in the information at any time within one month from the date of the warrant.

<sup>F377</sup>(2) .....

- (3) A person who intentionally obstructs a person in the exercise of powers conferred on him under this section shall be guilty of an offence and liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding the fifth level on the standard scale.
- (4) A person who discloses, otherwise than for the purposes of any legal proceedings or of a report of any such proceedings, any information obtained by means of an exercise of powers conferred by this section shall be guilty of an offence and liable—
  - (a) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum;
  - (b) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or to a fine, or both.



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (5) In the application of this section to Scotland, for the reference to a justice of the peace there shall be substituted a reference to the sheriff and for any reference to information on oath there shall be substituted a reference to evidence on oath.
- (6) In the application of this section to Northern Ireland, for the reference to a justice of the peace there shall be substituted a reference to a resident magistrate and for any reference to information on oath there shall be substituted a reference to a complaint on oath.

**Textual Amendments**

**F375** Words in s. 196(1)(a) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F376** Words in s. 196(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 66\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F377** S. 196(2) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 66\(3\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C83** S. 196(1): transfer of functions (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 1 para. 9](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F378 197 Restriction on disclosure of information.**

.....

**Textual Amendments**

**F378** S. 197 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**198 Financial provisions.**

- (1) There shall be paid out of money provided by Parliament any increase attributable to this Act in the sums payable out of money so provided under any other Act.
- (2) Any sums received by the Secretary of State by virtue of this Act shall be paid into the Consolidated Fund.

**199 Notices.**

- F379** (1) .....
- F379** (2) .....
- F379** (3) .....
- F379** (4) .....

- (5) Any notice served [<sup>F380</sup>by OFCOM under section 21, 41, 42, 55, 103, 109, 110, 111 or 120] shall be published in such manner as that body consider appropriate, and shall be so published as soon as reasonably practicable after it is served.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

<sup>F381</sup>(6) .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F379** S. 199(1)-(4) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F380** Words in s. 199(5) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 67](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F381** S. 199(6) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

### 200 Regulations and orders.

- (1) Any power of the Secretary of State to make regulations or an order under this Act shall be exercisable by statutory instrument.
- (2) Any regulations or order made by the Secretary of State under this Act may make—
  - (a) different provision for different cases; and
  - (b) such supplemental, incidental, consequential or transitional provision or savings as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.

### 201 Programme services.

- (1) In this Act “programme service” means any of the following services (whether or not it is, or it requires to be, licensed <sup>F382</sup>...), namely—
  - <sup>F383</sup>(aa) any service which is a programme service within the meaning of the [Communications Act 2003](#);
  - (c) any other service which consists in the sending, by means of [<sup>F384</sup>an electronic communications network (within the meaning of the [Communications Act 2003](#))] , of sounds or visual images or both either—
    - (i) for reception at two or more places in the United Kingdom (whether they are so sent for simultaneous reception or at different times in response to requests made by different users of the service); or
    - (ii) for reception at a place in the United Kingdom for the purpose of being presented there to members of the public or to any group of persons.

<sup>F385</sup>(2A) Subsection (1)(c) does not apply to so much of a service consisting only of sound programmes as—

- (a) is a two-way service (within the meaning of section 248(4) of the [Communications Act 2003](#));
- (b) satisfies the conditions in section 248(5) of that Act; or
- (c) is provided for the purpose only of being received by persons who have qualified as users of the service by reason of being persons who fall within paragraph (a) or (b) of section 248(7) of that Act.

(2B) Subsection (1)(c) does not apply to so much of a service not consisting only of sound programmes as—

- (a) is a two-way service (within the meaning of section 232 of the [Communications Act 2003](#));

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) satisfies the conditions in section 233(5) of that Act; or
- (c) is provided for the purpose only of being received by persons who have qualified as users of the service by reason of being persons who fall within paragraph (a) or (b) of section 233(7) of that Act.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F382** Words in s. 201(1) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F383** S. 201(1)(aa) substituted for s. 201(1)(a)-(bb) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 360\(1\)\(a\)](#), [411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F384** Words in s. 201(1)(c) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 360\(1\)\(b\)](#), [411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F385** S. 201(2A)(2B) substituted for s. 201(2) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 360\(2\)](#), [411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

## 202 General interpretation.

- (1) In this Act (unless the context otherwise requires)—
- “advertising agent” shall be construed in accordance with subsection (7);
  - “the BBC” means the British Broadcasting Corporation;
  - [<sup>F386</sup>“a BBC company” means—
    - (a) any body corporate which is controlled by the BBC, or
    - (b) any body corporate in which the BBC or any body corporate falling within paragraph (a) above is (to any extent) a participant (as defined in paragraph 1(1) of Part I of Schedule 2);]
  - “body”, without more, means a body of persons whether incorporated or not, and includes a partnership;
  - “broadcast” means broadcast by wireless telegraphy;
  - [<sup>F387</sup>“a Channel 4 company” means—
    - (a) any body corporate which is controlled by the Channel Four Television Corporation, or
    - (b) any body corporate in which the Corporation or any body corporate falling within paragraph (a) above is (to any extent) a participant (as defined in paragraph 1(1) of Part I of Schedule 2);]
  - “connected”, in relation to any [<sup>F388</sup>person], shall be construed in accordance with paragraph 3 in Part I of Schedule 2;
  - “control”, in relation to a body, has the meaning given by paragraph 1(1) in that Part of that Schedule;
  - “dwelling-house” includes a hotel, inn, boarding-house or other similar establishment;
  - [<sup>F389</sup>“EEA Agreement” means the Agreement on the European Economic Area signed at Oporto on 2nd May 1992 as adjusted by the Protocol signed at Brussels on 17th March 1993;
  - “EEA State” means a State which is a contracting party to the EEA Agreement;]
  - “financial year” shall be construed in accordance with subsection (2);
  - “frequency” includes frequency band;

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

“modifications” includes additions, alterations and omissions;

[<sup>F390</sup>“OFCOM” means the Office of Communications;]

[<sup>F390</sup>“pension scheme” means a scheme for the payment of pensions, allowances or gratuities;

“programme” includes an advertisement and, in relation to any service, includes any item included in that service;

[<sup>F391</sup>“an S4C company” means—

(a) any body corporate which is controlled by the Welsh Authority, or

(b) any body corporate in which the Welsh Authority or any body corporate falling within paragraph (a) above is (to any extent) a participant (as defined in paragraph 1(1) of Part I of Schedule 2);]

<sup>F392</sup> ...

“the Welsh Authority” means the authority renamed Sianel Pedwar Cymru by section 56(1);

“wireless telegraphy” and “station for wireless telegraphy” have the same meaning as in the <sup>M37</sup>Wireless Telegraphy Act 1949.

(2) In any provision of—

(a) <sup>F393</sup> . . .

(b) Schedule <sup>F394</sup> ..., 2, 3, 6, <sup>F394</sup> ..., <sup>F395</sup> . . . or 19,

“financial year” means a financial year of the body with which that provision is concerned; and in any other provision of this Act “financial year” means the twelve months ending with 31st March.

(3) In this Act—

(a) references to pensions, allowances or gratuities include references to like benefits to be given on death or retirement; and

(b) any reference to the payment of pensions, allowances or gratuities to or in respect of any persons includes a reference to the making of payments towards provision for the payment of pensions, allowances or gratuities to or in respect of those persons.

(4) Any reference in this Act (however expressed) to a licence under this Act being in force is a reference to its being in force so as to authorise the provision under the licence of the licensed service; and any such reference shall accordingly not be construed as prejudicing the operation of any provisions of such a licence which are intended to have effect otherwise than at a time when the licensed service is authorised to be so provided.

[ Any reference in this Act to Council Directive [89/552/EEC](#) is a reference to that <sup>F396</sup>(4A) Directive as amended by Directive [97/36/EC](#) of the European Parliament and the Council.]

(5) It is hereby declared that, for the purpose of determining for the purposes of any provision of this Act whether a service is—

(a) <sup>F397</sup> ... capable of being received, within the United Kingdom or elsewhere, or

(b) for reception at any place or places, or in any area, in the United Kingdom, the fact that the service has been encrypted to any extent shall be disregarded.

<sup>F398</sup>(5A) . . . . .

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (6) Any reference in this Act, in relation to a service consisting of programmes transmitted by satellite—
- (a) to a person by whom the programmes are transmitted, or
  - (b) to a place from which the programmes are transmitted,
- is a reference to a person by whom, or a place from which, the programmes are transmitted to the satellite by means of which the service is provided.
- [ Subsections (2) and (3) of section 362 of the Communications Act 2003 (persons by whom services provided) are to apply for the purposes of this Act as they apply for the purposes of Part 3 of that Act.]
- <sup>F399</sup>(6A)
- (7) For the purposes of this Act—
- (a) a person shall not be regarded as carrying on business as an advertising agent, or as acting as such an agent, unless he carries on a business involving the selection and purchase of advertising time or space for persons wishing to advertise;
  - (b) a person who carries on such a business shall be regarded as carrying on business as an advertising agent irrespective of whether in law he is the agent of those for whom he acts;
  - (c) a person who is the proprietor of a newspaper shall not be regarded as carrying on business as an advertising agent by reason only that he makes arrangements on behalf of advertisers whereby advertisements appearing in the newspaper are also to appear in one or more other newspapers;
  - (d) a company or other body corporate shall not be regarded as carrying on business as an advertising agent by reason only that its objects or powers include or authorise that activity.]

### Textual Amendments

- F386** Definition “a BBC company” inserted (24.7.1996) in s. 202(1) by 1996 c. 55, s. 136, **Sch. 8**, para. 8 (with s. 43(1)(6))
- F387** Definition “a Channel 4 company” inserted (1.10.1996) in s. 201(1) by 1996 c. 55, s. 148(1), **Sch. 10 Pt. I para. 21(a)** (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, **Sch. 1**
- F388** Words in definition “connected” in s. 202(1) substituted (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 148(1), **Sch. 10 Pt. I para. 21(c)** (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, **Sch. 2**
- F389** S. 202(1): definitions of “EEA Agreement” and “EEA State” inserted (11.7.1997) by S.I. 1997/1682, reg. 2, **Sch. para. 14(2)**
- F390** Words in s. 202(1) inserted (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21)**, s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 68(2)** (with **Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), **Sch. 1** (with art. 11)
- F391** Definition “an S4C company” inserted (1.10.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 148(1), **Sch. 10 Pt. I para. 21(c)** (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, **Sch. 1**
- F392** Words in s. 202(1) repealed (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21)**, s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with **Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), **Sch. 1** (with art. 11)
- F393** S. 202(2)(a) repealed (1.4.1997) by 1996 c. 55, s. 148(2), **Sch. 11 Pt. I** (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1997/1005, **art. 4**
- F394** Words in s. 202(2)(b) repealed (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21)**, s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with **Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), **Sch. 1** (with art. 11)
- F395** Words in S. 202(2)(b) repealed (1.4.1997) by 1996 c. 55, s. 148(2), **Sch. 11 Pt. I** (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1997/1005, **art. 4**
- F396** S. 202(4A) inserted (30.12.1998) by S.I. 1998/3196, reg. 2, **Sch. para. 6(2)**

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- F397** Words in s. 202(5)(a) repealed (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with **Sch. 18**); **S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1** (with art. 11)
- F398** S. 202(5A) omitted (30.12.1998) by virtue of **S.I. 1998/3196, reg. 2, Sch. para. 6(3)**
- F399** S. 202(6A) inserted (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 68(3)** (with **Sch. 18**); **S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1** (with art. 11)

---

**Marginal Citations**

**M37** 1949 c. 54.

**203 Consequential and transitional provisions.**

- (1) The enactments mentioned in Schedule 20 to this Act shall have effect subject to the amendments there specified (being minor amendments or amendments consequential on the provisions of this Act).
- (2) Unless the context otherwise requires, in any enactment amended by this Act—
  - “programme”, in relation to a programme service, includes any item included in that service; and
  - “television programme” includes a teletext transmission.
- (3) The enactments mentioned in Schedule 21 to this Act (which include certain spent provisions) are hereby repealed to the extent specified in the third column of that Schedule.
- (4) The transitional provisions and savings contained in Schedule 22 to this Act shall have effect.

**204 Short title, commencement and extent.**

- (1) This Act may be cited as the Broadcasting Act 1990.
- (2) This Act shall come into force on such day as the Secretary of State may by order appoint; and different days may be so appointed for different provisions or for different purposes.
- (3) Subject to subsections (4) and (5), this Act extends to the whole of the United Kingdom.
- (4) In Part VII—
  - (a) section 162 and Schedule 15 extend to England and Wales only;
  - (b) section 163 extends to Scotland only;
  - (c) section 164 extends to England and Wales and Scotland; and
  - (d) section 165 extends to Northern Ireland only.
- (5) The amendments and repeals in Schedules 20 and 21 have the same extent as the enactments to which they refer.
- (6) Her Majesty may by Order in Council direct that any of the provisions of this Act shall extend to the Isle of Man or any of the Channel Islands with such modifications, if any, as appear to Her Majesty to be appropriate.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C84** [S. 204\(2\)](#): Power of appointment conferred by s. 204(2) partly exercised: [S.I. 1990/2347](#)



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## SCHEDULES

### F400 SCHEDULE 1

Section 1.

#### Textual Amendments

**F400** Sch. 1 repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 19(1) Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

### SCHEDULE 2

Sections 5 and 88.

#### RESTRICTIONS ON THE HOLDING OF LICENCES

#### PART I

#### GENERAL

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C85** Sch. 2 Pt. I applied (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 14 para. 18 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

1 (1) In this Schedule—

[<sup>F401</sup>“the 1996 Act” means the Broadcasting Act 1996;]

“advertising agency” means an individual or a body corporate who carries on business as an advertising agent (whether alone or in partnership) or has control over any body corporate which carries on business as an advertising agent, and any reference to an advertising agency includes a reference to an individual who—

(a) is a director or officer of any body corporate which carries on such a business, or

(b) is employed by any person who carries on such a business;

“associate”—

(a) [<sup>F402</sup>in relation to a body corporate, shall be construed in accordance with paragraph (1A), and]

(b) in relation to an individual, shall be construed in accordance with subparagraph (2);

[<sup>F403</sup>“Broadcasting Act licence” means a licence under Part 1 or 3 of this Act or Part 1 or 2 of the Broadcasting Act 1996;]

“control”—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) in relation to a body corporate, shall be construed in accordance with sub-paragraph (3), and
- (b) in relation to any body other than a body corporate, means the power of a person to secure, [<sup>F404</sup>by whatever means and whether directly or indirectly], that the affairs of the first-mentioned body are conducted in accordance with the wishes of that person;

F405 ...

F405 ...

“equity share capital” has the same meaning as in the <sup>M38</sup>Companies Act 1985;

“local authority”—

- (a) in relation to England <sup>F406</sup> . . . , means any of the following, that is to say, the council of a county, district or London borough, the Common Council of the City of London and the Council of the Isles of Scilly;
- (aa) [<sup>F407</sup>in relation to Wales, means a county council or county borough council;]
- (b) in relation to Scotland, means a [<sup>F408</sup>council constituted under section 2 of the Local Government etc. (Scotland) Act 1994]; and
- (c) in relation to Northern Ireland, means a district council;

F405 ...

F405 ...

F405 ...

“participant”, in relation to a body corporate, means a person who holds or is beneficially entitled to shares in that body or who possesses voting power in that body.

F405 ...

[<sup>F409</sup>(1A) For the purpose of determining the persons who are the associates of a body corporate for the purposes of this Schedule—

- (a) an individual shall be regarded as an associate of a body corporate if he is a director of that body corporate, and
- (b) a body corporate and another body corporate shall be regarded as associates of each other if one controls the other or if the same person controls both.]

(2) For the purpose of determining the persons who are an individual’s associates for the purposes of this Schedule, the following persons shall be regarded as associates of each other, namely—

- (a) any individual and that individual’s husband or wife and any relative, or husband or wife of a relative, of that individual or of that individual’s husband or wife;
- (b) any individual and any body corporate of which that individual is a director;
- (c) any person in his capacity as trustee of a settlement and the settlor or grantor and any person associated with the settlor or grantor;
- (d) persons carrying on business in partnership and the husband or wife and relatives of any of them;
- (e) any two or more persons acting together to secure or exercise control of a body corporate or other association or to secure control of any enterprise or assets;

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

and in this sub-paragraph “relative” means a brother, sister, uncle, aunt, nephew, niece, lineal ancestor or descendant (the stepchild or illegitimate child of any person, or anyone adopted by a person, whether legally or otherwise, as his child, being regarded as a relative or taken into account to trace a relationship in the same way as that person’s child); and references to a wife or husband shall include a former wife or husband and a reputed wife or husband.

- [<sup>F410</sup>(3) For the purposes of this Schedule a person controls a body corporate if—
- (a) he holds, or is beneficially entitled to, more than 50 per cent. of the equity share capital in the body, or possesses more than 50 per cent. of the voting power in it, or
  - (b) although he does not have such an interest in the body, it is reasonable, having regard to all the circumstances, to expect that he [<sup>F411</sup>would (if he chose to) be able in most cases or in significant respects], by whatever means and whether directly or indirectly, to achieve the result that [<sup>F412</sup>affairs] of the body are conducted in accordance with his wishes; or
  - (c) he holds, or is beneficially entitled to, 50 per cent. of the equity share capital in that body, or possesses 50 per cent. of the voting power in it, and an arrangement exists between him and any other participant in the body as to the manner in which any voting power in the body possessed by either of them is to be exercised, or as to the omission by either of them to exercise such voting power.
- (3A) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3)(c)—
- (a) “arrangement” includes any agreement or arrangement, whether or not it is, or is intended to be, legally enforceable, and
  - (b) a person shall be treated—
    - (i) as holding, or being beneficially entitled to, any equity share capital which is held by a body corporate which he controls or to which such a body corporate is beneficially entitled, and
    - (ii) as possessing any voting power possessed by such a body corporate.]
- (4) .....
- (5) For the purposes of any provision of this Schedule which refers to a body controlled by two or more persons or bodies of any description taken together, the persons or bodies in question shall not be regarded as controlling the body by virtue of paragraph (b) of sub-paragraph (3) unless they are acting together in concert.
- [<sup>F413</sup>(6) In this Schedule any reference to a participant with more than a [<sup>F414</sup>5 per cent.] interest in a body corporate is a reference to a person who—
- (a) holds or is beneficially entitled to more than [<sup>F414</sup>5 per cent.] of the shares in that body, or
  - (b) possesses more than [<sup>F414</sup>5 per cent.] of the voting power in that body.
- (7) Sub-paragraph (6) shall have effect subject to the necessary modifications in relation to other references in this Schedule—
- (a) to an interest of more than a specified percentage in a body corporate, or
  - (b) to an interest of a specified percentage or more in a body corporate.]
- [<sup>F415</sup>(8) .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F401** Definition inserted in Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 1(1) inserted (10.8.1996 for certain purposes otherwise 1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 73, **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 1(2)(a)** (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, arts. 3, 5, **Sch. 2**
- F402** Definition in Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 1(1) substituted (10.8.1996 for certain purposes otherwise 1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 73, **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 1 (2)(b)** (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, arts. 3, 5, **Sch. 2**
- F403** Definition inserted in Sch. 2 Pt. I. para. 1(1) (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21)**, s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 69(2)** (with **Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), **Sch. 1** (with art. 11)
- F404** Words in Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 1(1) substituted (10.8.1996 for certain purposes otherwise 1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 73, **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 1(2)(c)** (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, arts. 3, 5, **Sch. 2**
- F405** Definition in Sch. 2 Pt. I. para. 1(1) repealed (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21)**, s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with **Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), **Sch. 1** (with art. 11)
- F406** Sch. 2 Pt. I: Words in definition “local authority” in para. 1(1)(a) repealed (1.4.1996) by 1994 c. 19, ss. 66(6)(8), **Sch. 16 para. 89**, **Sch. 18**. (with ss. 54(5)(7), 55(5), Sch. 17 paras. 22(1), 23(2)); S.I. 1996/396, art. 4, **Sch. 2**
- F407** Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 1(1)(aa) inserted (1.4.1996) by 1994 c. 19, s. 66(6), **Sch. 16 para. 89** (with ss. 54(5)(7), 55(5), Sch. 17 paras. 22(1), 23(2)); S.I. 1996/396, art. 4, **Sch. 2**
- F408** Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 1(1)(b): Words beginning “council constituted” to “(Scotland Act 1994)” substituted (S.) (1.4.1996) for words “regional, islands or district council” by 1994 c. 39, s. 180(1), **Sch. 13 para. 166** (with s. 128(8)); S.I. 1996/323, art. 4(c)
- F409** Sch. 2 Pt. I. para. 1(1A) inserted (10.8.1996 for certain purposes otherwise 1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 73, **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 1(3)** (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, arts. 3, 5, **Sch. 2**
- F410** Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 1(3) substituted (10.8.1996 for certain purposes otherwise 1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 73, **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 1(4)** (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, arts. 3, 5, **Sch. 2**
- F411** Words in Sch. 2 Pt. I para 1(3)(b) substituted (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21)**, s. 411(2), s. 357(1)(a) (with **Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), **Sch. 1** (with art. 11)
- F412** Words in Sch. 2 Pt. I para 1(3)(b) substituted (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21)**, s. 411(2), s. 357(1)(b) (with **Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), **Sch. 1** (with art. 11)
- F413** Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 1(6)(7)(8) substituted (10.8.1996 for certain purposes otherwise 1.11.1996) for sub-paragraph (6) by 1996 c. 55, s. 73, **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 1(6)** (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, arts. 3, 5, **Sch. 2**
- F414** Words in Sch. 2 Pt. I para 1(6) substituted (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21)**, s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 69(3)** (with **Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), **Sch. 1** (with art. 11)
- F415** Sch. 2 Pt. I. para. 1(8) repealed (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21)**, s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with **Sch. 18**); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), **Sch. 1** (with art. 11)

### Marginal Citations

- M38** 1985 c. 6.

- 2 (1) [<sup>F416</sup>Subject to sub-paragraph (1A)] Any reference in paragraph 1 above to a person—
- (a) holding or being entitled to shares, or any amount of the shares or equity share capital, in a body corporate, or
  - (b) possessing voting power, or any amount of the voting power, in a body corporate,
- is a reference to his doing so, or being so entitled, whether alone or jointly with one or more other persons and whether directly or through one or more nominees.
- [<sup>F417</sup>(1A) For the purposes of this Schedule, a person’s holding of shares, or possession of voting power, in a body corporate shall be disregarded if, or to the extent that—
- (a) he holds the shares concerned—
    - (i) as a nominee,

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (ii) as a custodian (whether under a trust or by a contract), or
  - (iii) under an arrangement pursuant to which he has issued, or is to issue, depositary receipts, as defined by section 220(1) of the Companies Act 1985, in respect of the shares concerned, and
- (b) he is not entitled to exercise or control the exercise of voting rights in respect of the shares concerned.

(1B) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1A)(b)—

- (a) a person is not entitled to exercise or control the exercise of voting rights in respect of shares if he is bound (whether by contract or otherwise) not to exercise the voting rights, or not to exercise them otherwise than in accordance with the instructions of another, and
- (b) voting rights which a person is entitled to exercise or of which he is entitled to control the exercise only in certain circumstances shall be taken into account only when those circumstances have arisen and for as long as they continue to obtain.]

F418(2) .....

F419(3) .....

**Textual Amendments**

- F416** Words in Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 2(1) inserted (10.8.1996 for certain purposes otherwise 1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 73, **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 2(2)** (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, arts. 3, 5, **Sch. 2**
- F417** Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 2(1A)(1B) inserted (10.8.1996 for certain purposes otherwise 1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 73, **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 2(3)** (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, arts. 3, 5, **Sch. 2**
- F418** Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 2(2) repealed (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 148(2), **Sch. 11 Pt. I** (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, **Sch. 2**
- F419** Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 2(3) repealed (1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 148(2), **Sch. 11 Pt. I** (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, **Sch. 2**

[<sup>F420</sup>3 For the purposes of this Schedule the following persons shall be treated as connected with a particular person—

- (a) a person who controls that person,
- (b) an associate of that person or of a person falling within paragraph (a), and
- (c) a body which is controlled by that person or by an associate of that person.]

**Textual Amendments**

- F420** Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 3 substituted (10.8.1996 for certain purposes otherwise 1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 73, **Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 3** (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, arts. 3, 5, **Sch. 2**

F421<sup>3A</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

- F421** Sch. 2 para. 3A repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

F422<sup>3B</sup> .....

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F422** Sch. 2 para. 3B repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F423** 4 .....

#### Textual Amendments

**F423** Sch. 2 Pt. 1 para. 4 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

## PART II

### DISQUALIFICATION FOR HOLDING LICENCES

#### *General disqualification of non-EEC nationals and bodies having political connections*

- 1 (1) Subject to [<sup>F424</sup>sub-paragraph (1A)], the following persons are disqualified persons in relation to [<sup>F425</sup>a Broadcasting Act licence]—
- <sup>F426</sup>(a) .....
  - <sup>F426</sup>(b) .....
  - (c) a local authority;
  - (d) a body whose objects are wholly or mainly of a political nature;
  - (e) a body affiliated to a body falling within paragraph (d);
  - (f) an individual who is an officer of a body falling within paragraph (d) or (e);
  - (g) a body corporate which is an associate of a body corporate falling within paragraph (d) or (e);
  - (h) a body corporate in which a body falling within any of paragraphs (c) to (e) and (g) is a participant with more than a 5 per cent. interest;
  - [<sup>F427</sup>(hh) a body corporate which is controlled by a body corporate falling within paragraph (h);]
  - (i) a body which is controlled by a person falling within any of paragraphs [<sup>F428</sup>(c)] to (g) or by two or more such persons taken together; and
  - (j) a body corporate in which a body falling within paragraph (i), other than one which is controlled—
    - (i) by a person falling within paragraph <sup>F429</sup>... (f), or
    - (ii) by two or more such persons taken together,
 is a participant with more than a 5 per cent. interest.

[<sup>F430</sup>(1A) Where a service is provided exclusively for the purposes of the carrying out of the functions of a local authority under section 142 of the Local Government Act 1972 (provision by local authorities of information relating to their activities), a person is disqualified by virtue of sub-paragraph (1) in relation to a licence to provide that service only if he would be so disqualified disregarding paragraph (c) of that sub-paragraph.]

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

F431(2) .....

F431(3) .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F424** Words in Sch. 2 Pt. II para 1(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), s. 349\(1\)\(a\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F425** Words in Sch. 2 Pt. II substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 69\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F426** Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 1(1)(a)(b) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), s. 348\(1\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F427** Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 1(1)(hh) inserted (1.11.1996) by [1996 c. 55, s. 73, Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 6\(2\)](#) (with [s. 43\(1\)\(6\)](#)); [1996/2120, art. 5, Sch. 2](#)
- F428** Words in Sch. 2 Pt. II para 1(1)(i) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 69\(5\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F429** Words in Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 1(1)(j)(i) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F430** Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 1(1A) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), s. 349\(1\)\(b\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F431** Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 1(2)(3) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### *Disqualification of religious bodies*

- 2 (1) <sup>F432</sup> The following persons are disqualified persons in relation only to licences falling within sub-paragraph (1A)—
- (a) a body whose objects are wholly or mainly of a religious nature;
  - (b) a body which is controlled by a body falling within paragraph (a) or by two or more such bodies taken together;
  - (c) a body which controls a body falling within paragraph (a);
  - (d) a body corporate which is an associate of a body corporate falling within paragraph (a), (b) or (c);
  - (e) a body corporate in which a body falling within any of paragraphs (a) to (d) is a participant with more than a 5 per cent. interest;
  - (f) an individual who is an officer of a body falling within paragraph (a); and
  - (g) a body which is controlled by an individual falling within paragraph (f) or by two or more such individuals taken together.

<sup>F433</sup>(1A) A licence falls within this sub-paragraph if it is—

- (a) a Channel 3 licence;
- (b) a Channel 5 licence;
- (c) a national sound broadcasting licence;
- (d) a public teletext licence;
- (e) an additional television service licence;
- (f) a television multiplex licence; or
- (g) a radio multiplex licence.

(1B) In this paragraph—



*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“additional television service licence” means a licence under Part 1 of this Act to provide an additional television service within the meaning of Part 3 of the Communications Act 2003;

“Channel 3 licence” and “Channel 5 licence” each has the same meaning as in Part 1 of this Act;

“national sound broadcasting licence” means a licence to provide a sound broadcasting service (within the meaning of Part 3 of this Act) which is a national service (within the meaning of that Part);

“public teletext licence” means a licence to provide the public teletext service (within the meaning of Part 3 of the Communications Act 2003);

“radio multiplex licence” means a licence under Part 2 of the Broadcasting Act 1996 to provide a radio multiplex service within the meaning of that Part; and

“television multiplex licence” means a licence under Part 1 of the Broadcasting Act 1996 to provide a multiplex service within the meaning of that Part.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F432** Words in Sch. 2 Pt. 2 para. 2(1) substituted (18.9.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 348(2), 411(2)** (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/1900](#), art. 2(2), [Sch. 2](#) (art. 5)

**F433** Sch. 2 Pt. 2 para. 2(1A)(1B) substituted for Sch. 2 Pt. 2 para. 2(2)(3) (18.9.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 348(2), 411(3)** (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/1900](#), art. 2(2), [Sch. 2](#) (art. 5)

#### *Disqualification of publicly-funded bodies for radio service licences*

- 3 (1) The following persons are disqualified persons in relation to any licence granted [<sup>F434</sup>under Part 3 of this Act or Part 2 of the Broadcasting Act 1996] other than a licence to provide a restricted service—
- (a) a body [<sup>F435</sup>(other than a local authority, the Welsh Authority or the BBC)] which has, in its last financial year, received more than half its income from public funds;
  - (b) a body which is controlled by a body falling within paragraph (a) or by two or more such bodies taken together; and
  - (c) a body corporate in which a body falling within paragraph (a) or (b) is a participant with more than a 5 per cent. interest.
- (2) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)(a) money is received from public funds if it is paid—
- (a) by a Minister of the Crown out of money provided by Parliament or out of the National Loans Fund;
  - (b) by a Northern Ireland department out of the Consolidated Fund of Northern Ireland or out of money appropriated by Measure of the Northern Ireland Assembly; or
  - (c) by a body which itself falls within sub-paragraph (1)(a), including a body which falls within that provision by virtue of this paragraph;
- but, in each case, there shall be disregarded any money paid as consideration for the acquisition of property or the supply of goods or services or as remuneration, expenses, pensions, allowances or similar benefits for or in respect of a person as the holder of an office.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F434** Words in Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 3(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), Sch. 15 para. 69\(8\)\(a\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F435** Words in Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 3(1)(a) substituted (24.7.1996 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, ss. 73, 149(1)(a), [Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 7](#) (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, [Sch. 2](#)

### *General disqualification on grounds of undue influence*

- 4 (1) A person is a disqualified person in relation to [<sup>F425</sup>a Broadcasting Act licence] if in the opinion of [<sup>F436</sup>OFCOM]—
- (a) any relevant body is, by the giving of financial assistance or otherwise, exerting influence over the activities of that person, and
  - (b) that influence has led, is leading or is likely to lead to results which are adverse to the public interest.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1) “relevant body”—
- (a) in relation to a licence granted [<sup>F437</sup>under Part 1 of this Act or Part 1 of the Broadcasting Act 1996, means a person] falling within paragraph 1(1)(c) to (h) or (j) above or a body which is controlled—
    - (i) by a person falling within paragraph 1(1)(c) to (g) above, or
    - (ii) by two or more such persons taken together; and
  - (b) in relation to a licence granted [<sup>F438</sup>under Part 3 of this Act or Part 2 of the Broadcasting Act 1996, means a person] falling within paragraph 1(1)(c) to (h) or (j) or 3 above or a body which is controlled .
    - [<sup>F439</sup>(i) by a person falling within paragraph 1(1)(c) to (g) above;
    - (ii) by a person falling within paragraph 3 above; or
    - (iii) by two or more persons taken together each of whom falls within sub-paragraph (i) or (ii) (whether or not they all fall within the same sub-paragraph).]

### Textual Amendments

- F425** Words in Sch. 2 Pt. II substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 69\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F436** Words in Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 4(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), Sch. 15 para. 69\(7\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F437** Words in Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 4(2)(a) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), Sch. 15 para. 69\(8\)\(a\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F438** Words in Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 4(2)(b) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), Sch. 15 para. 69\(8\)\(b\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)
- F439** Words in Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 4(2)(b) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 348\(4\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

### *General disqualification of broadcasting bodies*

- 5 The following persons are disqualified persons in relation to [<sup>F425</sup>a Broadcasting Act licence] —
- (a) the BBC;

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) the Welsh Authority;
- <sup>F440</sup>(c) .....
- <sup>F440</sup>(d) .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F425** Words in Sch. 2 Pt. II substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 69\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F440** Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 5(c)(d) repealed (24.7.1996 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.11.1996) by 1996 c. 55, ss. 73, 149(1)(a), [Sch. 2 Pt. I para. 8](#), [Sch. 11 Pt. I](#) (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 5, [Sch. 2](#)

*[<sup>F441</sup>Disqualification of certain companies for certain licences]*

**Textual Amendments**

**F441** Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 5A and cross-heading inserted (24.7.1996 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.10.1996) by 1996 c. 55, ss. 73, 149(1)(a), [Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 9](#) (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, [Sch. 1](#)

- <sup>F442</sup>5A(1) A BBC company, a Channel 4 company or an S4C company is a disqualified person in relation to—
- (a) any licence <sup>F443</sup>... to provide regional or national Channel 3 services or Channel 5, <sup>F444</sup>...
  - <sup>F444</sup>(b) .....
- (2) A BBC company is also a disqualified person in relation to any licence <sup>F445</sup>... to provide a national, local or restricted service within the meaning of Part III of this Act.
- <sup>F446</sup>(3)] .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F442** Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 5A inserted (24.7.1996 for certain purposes, otherwise 1.10.1996) by 1996 c. 55, ss. 73, 149(1)(a), [Sch. 2 Pt. II para. 9](#) (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, [Sch. 1](#)

**F443** Words in Sch. 2 para. 5A(1)(a) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 69\(9\)\(a\)](#), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F444** Sch. 2 para. 5A(1)(b) and the word immediately preceding it repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 69\(9\)\(b\)](#), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F445** Words in Sch. 2 para. 5A(2) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 69\(9\)\(c\)](#), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F446** Sch. 2 para. 5A(3) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

*General disqualification of advertising agencies*

- 6 The following persons are disqualified persons in relation to [<sup>F425</sup>a Broadcasting Act licence]—
- (a) an advertising agency;

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) an associate of an advertising agency;
- (c) any body which is controlled by a person falling within sub-paragraph (a) or (b) or by two or more such persons taken together;
- (d) any body corporate in which a person falling within any of sub-paragraphs (a) to (c) is a participant with more than a 5 per cent. interest.

**Textual Amendments**

**F425** Words in Sch. 2 Pt. II substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 69\(4\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**<sup>F447</sup>PART III.**

RESTRICTIONS TO PREVENT ACCUMULATIONS OF INTERESTS IN LICENSED SERVICES

**Textual Amendments**

**F447** Sch. 2 Pts. III-V repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), ss. 350(1), 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**<sup>F447</sup>PART IV**

RESTRICTIONS ON CONTROLLING INTERESTS IN  
BOTH NEWSPAPERS AND LICENSED SERVICES

**<sup>F447</sup>PART V**

RESTRICTION ON HOLDING OF LICENCES BY  
OPERATORS OF PUBLIC TELECOMMUNICATION SYSTEMS

SCHEDULE 3

Section 23.

THE CHANNEL FOUR TELEVISION CORPORATION: SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C86** Sch. 3: transfer of functions (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 1 para. 4](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

*Status and capacity*

- 1 (1) The Corporation shall be a body corporate.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) The Corporation shall not be treated for the purposes of the enactments and rules of law relating to the privileges of the Crown as a body exercising functions on behalf of the Crown.
- [<sup>F448</sup>(3) The Corporation may do anything which appears to them to be incidental or conducive to the carrying out of their functions.
- (4) The powers of the Corporation under sub-paragraph (3) include power, to the extent that it appears to them incidental or conducive to the carrying out of their functions to do so—
- (a) to borrow money;
  - (b) to carry on activities (other than those comprised in their duty to carry out their primary functions) through Channel 4 companies; and
  - (c) to participate with others in the carrying on of any such activities.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F448** Sch. 3 para. 1(3)(4) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 199\(4\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

#### *Appointment of members*

- 2 (1) A person shall be disqualified for being a member of the Corporation so long as he is—
- (a) a governor or employee of the BBC; [<sup>F449</sup>or
  - (b) a member or employee of OFCOM.]
- (2) Before appointing a person to be a member of the Corporation, [<sup>F450</sup>OFCOM] shall satisfy themselves that that person will have no such financial or other interest as is likely to affect prejudicially the discharge by him of his functions as a member of the Corporation; and [<sup>F450</sup>OFCOM] shall also satisfy themselves from time to time with respect to every member of the Corporation that he has no such interest.
- (3) Any person who is, or whom [<sup>F450</sup>OFCOM] propose to appoint to be, a member of the Corporation shall, whenever requested by [<sup>F450</sup>OFCOM] to do so, furnish them with such information as they consider necessary for the performance by them of their duties under sub-paragraph (2).

#### Textual Amendments

**F449** Sch. 3 para. 2(1)(b) substituted for Sch. 3 para. 2(1)(b)-(d) (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 70\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

**F450** Words in Sch. 3 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 70\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

#### *Tenure of office*

- 3 (1) Subject to the following provisions of this paragraph, each member of the Corporation shall hold and vacate office in accordance with the terms of his appointment.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) A person shall not be appointed to be a member of the Corporation for more than five years at a time.
- [<sup>F451</sup>(2A) OFCOM may at any time, by notice to a member of the Corporation, terminate the appointment of that member.
- (2B) Before terminating a person's appointment under sub-paragraph (2A), OFCOM must consult the Secretary of State.]
- (3) Any member of the Corporation may at any time resign his office by notice to [<sup>F450</sup>OFCOM].
- (4) This paragraph does not apply in relation to ex-officio members of the Corporation.

#### Textual Amendments

**F450** Words in Sch. 3 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 70\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F451** Sch. 3 para. 3(2A)(2B) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 200](#), 411(2) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### *Remuneration and pensions of members*

- 4 (1) The Corporation may pay —
- (a) to each member other than an ex-officio member such remuneration and allowances, and
  - (b) to each ex-officio member such allowances,
- as [<sup>F450</sup>OFCOM] may determine.
- (2) The Corporation may pay or make provision for paying to or in respect of any member such sums by way of pensions, allowances or gratuities as [<sup>F450</sup>OFCOM] may determine.
- (3) Where a person ceases to be a member otherwise than on the expiry of his term of office and it appears to [<sup>F450</sup>OFCOM] that there are special circumstances which make it right for him to receive compensation, the Corporation may make a payment to him of such amount as [<sup>F450</sup>OFCOM] may determine.
- (4) Sub-paragraphs (2) and (3) do not apply in relation to ex-officio members of the Corporation.
- (5) The approval of the Treasury shall be required for any determination under this paragraph other than a determination under sub-paragraph (1) having effect in relation to an ex-officio member of the Corporation.

#### Textual Amendments

**F450** Words in Sch. 3 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 70\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Disqualification of members of Corporation for  
House of Commons and Northern Ireland Assembly*

- 5 In Part II of Schedule 1 to the <sup>M39</sup>House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (bodies of which all members are disqualified) there shall be inserted at the appropriate place—

“The Channel Four Television Corporation” and a corresponding amendment shall be made in Part II of Schedule 1 to the

<sup>M40</sup>

Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975.

**Marginal Citations**

**M39** 1975 c. 24.

**M40** 1975 c. 25.

*Proceedings*

- 6 (1) Subject to paragraph 7, the quorum of the Corporation and the arrangements relating to their meetings shall be such as the Corporation may determine.
- (2) The arrangements may, with the approval of [<sup>F450</sup>OFCOM] , provide for the discharge, under the general direction of the Corporation, of any of the Corporation’s functions by a committee or by one or more of the members or employees of the Corporation.

**Textual Amendments**

**F450** Words in Sch. 3 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 70\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

- 7 (1) A member who is in any way directly or indirectly interested in any matter that is brought up for consideration at a meeting of the Corporation shall disclose the nature of his interest to the meeting; and, where such a disclosure is made—
- (a) the disclosure shall be recorded in the minutes of the meeting, and
- (b) (subject to sub-paragraph (2)) the member shall not take any part in any deliberation or decision of the Corporation, or of any of their committees, with respect to that matter.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1)(b) shall not apply in relation to any meeting of the Corporation at which all of the other members present resolve that the member’s interest should be disregarded for the purposes of that provision.
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1), a general notification given at a meeting of the Corporation by a member to the effect that he is a member of a specified company or firm and is to be regarded as interested in any matter involving that company or firm shall be regarded as a sufficient disclosure of his interest in relation to any such matter.
- (4) A member need not attend in person at a meeting of the Corporation in order to make a disclosure which he is required to make under this paragraph if he takes



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

reasonable steps to secure that the disclosure is made by a notice which is taken into consideration and read at the meeting.

(5) In this paragraph references to a meeting of the Corporation include references to a meeting of any of their committees.

8 The validity of any proceedings of the Corporation shall not be affected by any vacancy among the members or by any defect in the appointment of a member or by any failure to comply with the requirements of paragraph 7.

#### *Employees of the Corporation*

9 (1) The Corporation shall appoint a chief executive of the Corporation, and may appoint such other employees as they may determine.

(2) If the Corporation determine to do so in the case of any of their employees, the Corporation shall pay to or in respect of those employees such pensions, allowances or gratuities, or provide and maintain for them such pension schemes (whether contributory or not), as the Corporation may determine.

(3) If any employee of the Corporation—

(a) is a participant in any pension scheme applicable to his employment, and

(b) becomes a member of the Corporation other than an ex-officio member,

he may, if [<sup>F450</sup>OFCOM] so determine, be treated for the purposes of the pension scheme as if his service as a member of the Corporation were service as an employee of the Corporation.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F450** Words in Sch. 3 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 70\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### *Authentication of Corporation's seal*

10 The application of the seal of the Corporation shall be authenticated by the signature of the chairman or of some other person authorised for the purpose.

#### *Presumption of authenticity of documents issued by Corporation*

11 Any document purporting to be an instrument issued by the Corporation and to be duly executed under the seal of the Corporation or to be signed on behalf of the Corporation shall be received in evidence and shall be deemed to be such an instrument unless the contrary is shown.

#### *Accounts and audit*

12 (1) The Corporation shall keep proper accounts and proper records in relation to the accounts, and shall prepare in respect of each financial year a statement of accounts in such form as the Secretary of State may direct with the approval of the Treasury.

(2) The accounts of the Corporation shall be audited by auditors to be appointed by the Corporation with the approval of the Secretary of State.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- <sup>F452</sup>[(3) A person shall not be qualified to be appointed as a auditor in pursuance of sub-paragraph (2) unless he is eligible for appointment as a company auditor under section 25 of the Companies Act 1989.]
- (4) The Corporation shall at all reasonable times upon demand made by the Secretary of State or by any persons authorised by him in that behalf—
- (a) afford to him or them full liberty to examine the accounts of the Corporation; and
  - (b) furnish him or them with all forecasts, estimates, information and documents which he or they may require with respect to the financial transactions and commitments of the Corporation.

**Textual Amendments**

**F452** Sch. 3 para. 12(3) substituted (1.10.1991) by [S.I. 1991/1997, reg. 2, Sch. para.77\(3\)](#).

*Annual reports*

- 13 (1) As soon as possible after the end of every financial year, the Corporation shall prepare a general report of their proceedings during that year, and transmit it to the Secretary of State who shall lay copies of it before each House of Parliament.
- (2) The report shall have attached to it the statement of accounts for the year and a copy of any report made by the auditors on that statement, and shall include such information (including information relating to the financial position of the Corporation) as the Secretary of State may from time to time direct.

<sup>F453</sup>SCHEDULE 4

Section 39.

**Textual Amendments**

**F453** Sch. 4 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

<sup>F454</sup>SCHEDULE 5

Section 50.

**Textual Amendments**

**F454** Sch. 5 repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## SCHEDULE 6

Section 56.

### THE WELSH AUTHORITY: SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

#### *Status and capacity*

- 1 (1) The Welsh Authority (in this Schedule referred to as “the Authority”) shall not be treated for the purposes of the enactments and rules of law relating to the privileges of the Crown as a body exercising functions on behalf of the Crown.
- [<sup>F455</sup>(2) The Authority may do anything which appears to them to be incidental or conducive to the carrying out of their functions.
- (3) The powers of the Authority under sub-paragraph (2) include power, to the extent that it appears to them incidental or conducive to the carrying out of their functions to do so—
- (a) to carry on activities (other than those comprised in their duty to carry out their functions under section 204 of the Communications Act 2003) through S4C companies; and
  - (b) to participate with others in the carrying on of any such activities.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F455** Sch. 6 para. 1(2)(3) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), ss. **206(6)**, 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

#### *Appointment of members*

- 2 <sup>F456</sup>(1) .....
- (2) The members of the Authority shall not at any time include—
- (a) more than one person who is either a governor or an employee of the BBC; or
  - (b) more than one person who is either a member or an employee of [<sup>F457</sup>OFCOM].
- (3) Before appointing a person to be a member of the Authority, the Secretary of State shall satisfy himself that that person will have no such financial or other interest as is likely to affect prejudicially the discharge by him of his functions as a member of the Authority; and the Secretary of State shall also satisfy himself from time to time with respect to every member of the Authority that he has no such interest.
- (4) Any person who is, or whom the Secretary of State proposes to appoint to be, a member of the Authority shall, whenever requested by the Secretary of State to do so, furnish him with such information as the Secretary of State considers necessary for the performance by him of his duties under sub-paragraph (3).

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F456** Sch. 6 para. 2(1) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 71(2)(a), Sch. 19(1) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**F457** Words in Sch. 6 para. 2(2)(b) substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 71(2)(b) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *Tenure of office*

- 3 (1) Subject to the following provisions of this paragraph, each member of the Authority shall hold and vacate office in accordance with the terms of his appointment.
- (2) A person shall not be appointed to be a member of the Authority for more than five years at a time.
- (3) Any member of the Authority may at any time resign his office by notice in writing to the Secretary of State.

### *Remuneration and pensions of members*

- 4 (1) The Authority may pay to each member such remuneration and allowances as the Secretary of State may determine.
- (2) The Authority may pay or make provision for paying to or in respect of any member such sums by way of pensions, allowances or gratuities as the Secretary of State may determine.
- (3) Where a person ceases to be a member otherwise than on the expiry of his term of office and it appears to the Secretary of State that there are special circumstances which make it right for him to receive compensation, the Authority may make a payment to him of such amount as the Secretary of State may determine.
- (4) The approval of the Treasury shall be required for any determination under this paragraph.

### *Disqualification of members of Authority for House of Commons*

- 5 In Part II of Schedule 1 to the <sup>M41</sup>House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (bodies of which all members are disqualified) there shall be inserted at the appropriate place—

“Sianel Pedwar Cymru”.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M41** 1975 c. 24.

### *Proceedings*

- 6 (1) Subject to paragraph 7, the quorum of the Authority and the arrangements relating to their meetings shall be such as the Authority may determine.
- (2) The arrangements may provide for the discharge, under the general direction of the Authority, of any of the Authority’s functions by a committee or by one or more of the members or employees of the Authority.
- 7 (1) A member who is in any way directly or indirectly interested in any matter that is brought up for consideration at a meeting of the Authority shall disclose the nature of his interest to the meeting; and, where such a disclosure is made—
- (a) the disclosure shall be recorded in the minutes of the meeting, and

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) (subject to sub-paragraph (2)) the member shall not take any part in any deliberation or decision of the Authority, or of any of their committees, with respect to that matter.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1)(b) shall not apply in relation to any meeting of the Authority at which all of the other members present resolve that the member's interest should be disregarded for the purposes of that provision.
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1), a general notification given at a meeting of the Authority by a member to the effect that he is a member of a specified company or firm and is to be regarded as interested in any matter involving that company or firm shall be regarded as a sufficient disclosure of his interest in relation to any such matter.
- (4) A member need not attend in person at a meeting of the Authority in order to make a disclosure which he is required to make under this paragraph if he takes reasonable steps to secure that the disclosure is made by a notice which is taken into consideration and read at the meeting.
- (5) In this paragraph references to a meeting of the Authority include references to a meeting of any of their committees.
- 8 The validity of any proceedings of the Authority shall not be affected by any vacancy among the members or by any defect in the appointment of a member or by any failure to comply with the requirements of paragraph 7.

#### *Employees of the Authority*

- 9 (1) The Authority shall appoint a secretary and may appoint such other employees as they may determine.
- (2) If the Authority determine to do so in the case of any of their employees, the Authority shall pay to or in respect of those employees such pensions, allowances or gratuities, or provide and maintain for them such pension schemes (whether contributory or not), as the Authority may determine.
- (3) If any employee of the Authority—
- (a) is a participant in any pension scheme applicable to his employment, and
- (b) becomes a member of the Authority,
- he may, if the Secretary of State so determines, be treated for the purposes of the pension scheme as if his service as a member of the Authority were service as an employee of the Authority.

#### *Authentication of Authority's seal*

- 10 The application of the seal of the Authority shall be authenticated by the signature of the chairman or of some other person authorised for the purpose.

#### *Presumption of authenticity of documents issued by Authority*

- 11 Any document purporting to be an instrument issued by the Authority and to be duly executed under the seal of the Authority or to be signed on behalf of the Authority shall be received in evidence and shall be deemed to be such an instrument unless the contrary is shown.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *Accounts and audit*

- 12 (1) The Authority shall keep proper accounts and proper records in relation to the accounts, and shall prepare in respect of each financial year a statement of accounts in such form as the Secretary of State may direct with the approval of the Treasury.
- [<sup>F458</sup>(1A) The statement of accounts must deal separately with the public service fund referred to in section 61A of this Act and with [<sup>F459</sup>the assets of the Authority that are not comprised in that fund; and accordingly, the statement must deal with liabilities separately according to whether they fall to be met from that fund or from those assets. ]]
- (2) The accounts of the Authority shall be audited by auditors to be appointed by the Authority with the approval of the Secretary of State.
- <sup>F460</sup>[(3) A person shall not be qualified to be appointed as a auditor in pursuance of sub-paragraph (2) unless he is eligible for appointment as a company auditor under section 25 of the Companies Act 1989.]
- (4) The Authority shall at all reasonable times upon demand made by the Secretary of State or by any persons authorised by him in that behalf—
- (a) afford to him or them full liberty to examine the accounts of the Authority; and
  - (b) furnish him or them with all forecasts, estimates, information and documents which he or they may require with respect to the financial transactions and commitments of the Authority.

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F458** Sch. 6 para. 12(1A) inserted (1.10.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 81(2); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, Sch. 1

**F459** Words in Sch. 6 para. 12(1A) substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 71(3) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**F460** Sch. 6 para. 12(3) substituted (1.10.1991) by S.I. 1991/1997, reg. 2, Sch. para. 77(4)

### *Annual reports*

- 13 (1) As soon as possible after the end of every financial year, the Authority shall prepare a general report of their proceedings during that year, and transmit it to the Secretary of State who shall lay copies of it before each House of Parliament.
- (2) The report shall have attached to it the statement of accounts for the year and a copy of any report made by the auditors on that statement, <sup>F461</sup>....
- [<sup>F462</sup>(3) The report shall also—
- (a) set out every contravention notification given by OFCOM to the Authority during the year; and
  - (b) include such other information (including information relating to the Authority's financial position) as the Secretary of State may from time to time direct.
- (4) In sub-paragraph (3), “contravention notification” means a notification of a determination by OFCOM of a contravention by the Authority of any obligation imposed by or under this Act, the 1996 Act or Part 3 of the Communications Act 2003.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F461** Words in Sch. 6 para. 13(2) repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), ss. 342(a), 411(2), Sch. 19(1) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- F462** Sch. 6 para. 13(3)(4) inserted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), ss. 342(b), 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

### Advisory committees

- 14 The Authority may appoint, or arrange for the assistance of, advisory committees to give advice to them on such matters relating to the Authority's functions as the Authority may determine.

## SCHEDULE 7

Sections 67, 77 and 121.

### QUALIFYING REVENUE: SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

#### PART I

#### QUALIFYING REVENUE FOR PURPOSES OF PART I OR II OF THIS ACT

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C87** Sch. 7 Pt. I applied (with modifications) (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 9 para. 8(7) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- C88** Sch. 7 Pt. I applied (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 10 para. 15(3) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)
- C89** Sch. 7 Pt. I applied (with modifications) (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), ss. 237(5), 411(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

### Computation of qualifying revenue

- 1 (1) It shall be the duty of [F463OFCOM] to draw up, and from time to time review, a statement setting out the principles to be followed in ascertaining the qualifying revenue in relation to a person—
- for any accounting period of his, or
  - for any year,
- for the purposes of any provision of Part I or Part II of this Act.
- (2) A statement under this paragraph may set out different principles for persons holding different kinds of licences.
- (3) Before drawing up or revising a statement under this paragraph [F463OFCOM] shall consult the Secretary of State and the Treasury.
- (4) [F463OFCOM] shall—
- publish the statement drawn up under this paragraph and every revision of that statement; and



*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) transmit a copy of that statement, and every revision of it, to the Secretary of State;
- and the Secretary of State shall lay copies of the statement and of every such revision before each House of Parliament.

#### Textual Amendments

**F463** Words in Sch. 7 Pt. I substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 72(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

#### Disputes

- 2 (1) For the purposes of any provision of Part I or Part II of this Act—
- (a) the amount of the qualifying revenue in relation to any person for any accounting period of his, or (as the case may be) for any year, or
- (b) the amount of any payment to be made to [F463OFCOM] by any person in respect of any such revenue, or of an instalment of any such payment,
- shall, in the event of a disagreement between [F463OFCOM] and that person, be the amount determined by [F463OFCOM] .
- (2) No determination of [F463OFCOM] under this paragraph shall be called in question in any court of law, or be the subject of any arbitration; but nothing in this sub-paragraph shall prevent the bringing of proceedings for judicial review.

#### Textual Amendments

**F463** Words in Sch. 7 Pt. I substituted (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 72(2) (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

## PART II

### QUALIFYING REVENUE FOR PURPOSES OF PART III OF THIS ACT

#### Computation of qualifying revenue

- 1 (1) It shall be the duty of [F464OFCOM] to draw up, and from time to time review, a statement setting out the principles to be followed in ascertaining the qualifying revenue for any accounting period of a licence holder for the purposes of any provision of Part III of this Act.
- (2) A statement under this paragraph may set out different principles for persons holding different kinds of licences.
- (3) Before drawing up or revising a statement under this paragraph [F464OFCOM] shall consult the Secretary of State and the Treasury.
- (4) [F464OFCOM] shall—
- (a) publish the statement drawn up under this paragraph and every revision of that statement; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) transmit a copy of that statement, and every revision of it, to the Secretary of State;
- and the Secretary of State shall lay copies of the statement and of every such revision before each House of Parliament.

**Textual Amendments**

**F464** Words in *Sch. 7 Pt. II* substituted (29.12.2003) by *Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 72(3)* (with *Sch. 18*); *S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1* (with *art. 11*)

*Disputes*

- 2 (1) For the purposes of any provision of Part III of this Act—
- (a) the amount of the qualifying revenue for any accounting period of a person, or
- (b) the amount of any payment to be made to [F464OFCOM] by any person in respect of any such revenue, or of an instalment of any such payment,
- shall, in the event of a disagreement between [F464OFCOM] and that person, be the amount determined by [F464OFCOM] .
- (2) No determination of [F464OFCOM] under this paragraph shall be called in question in any court of law, or be the subject of any arbitration; but nothing in this sub-paragraph shall prevent the bringing of proceedings for judicial review.

**Textual Amendments**

**F464** Words in *Sch. 7 Pt. II* substituted (29.12.2003) by *Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 72(3)* (with *Sch. 18*); *S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1* (with *art. 11*)

F465 SCHEDULE 8

Section 83.

**Textual Amendments**

**F465** *Sch. 8* repealed (29.12.2003) by *Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 19(1)* Note 1 (with *Sch. 18*); *S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1* (with *art. 11*)

SCHEDULE 9

Section 127.

SCHEME PROVIDING FOR DIVISION OF ASSETS OF IBA

*Preliminary*

- 1 In this Schedule—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“relevant transferee” shall be construed in accordance with paragraph 2(1) below; and

“transfer scheme” means a scheme under this Schedule made either by the IBA under paragraph 2(1) below or by the Secretary of State under paragraph 2(4) below.

*Making and modification of transfer scheme*

- 2 (1) The IBA shall make a scheme under this Schedule for the division of all their property, rights and liabilities between—
- (a) the Commission,
  - (b) the Radio Authority, and
  - (c) the nominated company;
- and references in this Schedule to the relevant transferees are references to the bodies specified in paragraphs (a) to (c) above.
- (2) Where such a scheme is made by the IBA, it shall not be capable of coming into force in accordance with section 127(1) of this Act unless it is approved by the Secretary of State.
- (3) Where such a scheme is submitted to the Secretary of State for his approval, he may modify the scheme before approving it.
- (4) If—
- (a) the IBA have not, before such time as the Secretary of State may notify to them as the latest time for the submission of such a scheme, submitted such a scheme for his approval, or
  - (b) the Secretary of State decides not to approve (either with or without modifications) a scheme that has been submitted to him by the IBA,
- the Secretary of State may himself make a scheme for the division of the IBA’s property, rights and liabilities between the relevant transferees.
- (5) If, at any time after the Secretary of State has either—
- (a) approved (either with or without modifications) a scheme under this Schedule made by the IBA, or
  - (b) himself made such a scheme,
- but before the scheme has come into force in accordance with section 127(1) of this Act, the Secretary of State considers it appropriate to do so, he may determine that the scheme shall, on its so coming into force, come into force with such modifications as may be specified in his determination; and, in any such case, the scheme shall accordingly, on its coming into force, come into force with those modifications.
- (6) If at any time after a transfer scheme has come into force—
- (a) the Secretary of State considers it appropriate to make an order under this sub-paragraph, and
  - (b) every relevant transferee who would be affected by the order either—
    - (i) (in a case where any such transferee is the nominated company and that company has ceased to be wholly owned by the Crown) has consented to the making of the order, or
    - (ii) (in any other case) has been consulted by the Secretary of State,

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

the Secretary of State may by order provide that the scheme shall for all purposes be deemed to have come into force with such modifications as may be specified in the order.

- (7) Any power to modify a transfer scheme which is conferred on the Secretary of State by this paragraph may be so exercised as to make any such provision as could have been made by the scheme, and an order under sub-paragraph (6) above may provide for any of its provisions to have effect as from the coming into force of the scheme to which it relates.
- (8) In determining whether and in what manner to exercise any power conferred on him by this paragraph the Secretary of State shall have regard to the need to ensure that the division of property, rights and liabilities between the relevant transferees which is effected under this Schedule allocates property, rights and liabilities to those transferees in such a manner as appears to him to be appropriate—
- (a) in the case of the Commission and the Radio Authority, in the light of the functions conferred on those bodies by this Act; and
  - (b) in the case of the nominated company, with a view to the carrying on by that company of a business consisting of—
    - (i) the provision of broadcasting transmission services and services related to such services, and
    - (ii) the carrying out of research and development work relating to broadcasting.
- (9) It shall be the duty of the IBA and each of the relevant transferees to provide the Secretary of State with all such information and other assistance as he may reasonably require for the purposes of, or in connection with, the exercise of any power conferred on him by this paragraph.
- (10) Nothing in this paragraph shall require a scheme under this Schedule to make provision—
- (a) with respect to any equipment or other asset which the IBA have agreed to dispose of in pursuance of section 132(1) or 133(6) of this Act, or
  - (b) with respect to any liabilities of the IBA which—
    - (i) have not yet become enforceable against the IBA, and
    - (ii) are not specifically and exclusively referable to any particular part or parts of the undertaking of the IBA which is or are transferred in accordance with any such scheme to one or more of the relevant transferees, or
  - (c) with respect to any such rights or liabilities as are mentioned in sub-paragraph (11).
- (11) Those rights and liabilities are rights and liabilities acquired by the IBA in connection with the sharing by the IBA and the BBC of the use of facilities (of whatever description) in connection with the transmission of television programmes or local sound broadcasts.

#### *Content of transfer scheme*

- 3 (1) A transfer scheme may—
- (a) define the property, rights and liabilities to be allocated to a particular relevant transferee—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (i) by specifying or describing the property, rights and liabilities in question,
  - (ii) by referring to all the property, rights and liabilities comprised in a specified part of the IBA's undertaking, or
  - (iii) partly in the one way and partly in the other;
  - (b) provide that any rights or liabilities specified or described in the scheme shall be enforceable either by or against either or any, or by or against both or all, of two or more relevant transferees;
  - (c) impose on any relevant transferee an obligation to enter into such written agreements with, or execute such instruments in favour of, such other relevant transferee as may be specified in the scheme;
  - (d) create for any of the relevant transferees an interest in or right over property transferred in accordance with the scheme to any other of those transferees;
  - (e) in connection with any provision made by virtue of paragraph (d), make incidental provision as to the interests, rights and liabilities of other persons with respect to the property in question.
- (2) Without prejudice to the generality of sub-paragraph (1)(a), a transfer scheme may, in connection with any transfer to be made in accordance with the scheme, exclude from the transfer any rights and liabilities falling within paragraph 2(11) above and described in the scheme.
- (3) A transfer scheme may also allocate to any of the relevant transferees such property, rights and liabilities to which the IBA may become entitled or subject after the making of the scheme and before the transfer date as may be described in the scheme.
- (4) The property, rights and liabilities of the IBA that are capable of being transferred in accordance with a transfer scheme include—
- (a) property, rights and liabilities that would not otherwise be capable of being transferred or assigned by the IBA;
  - (b) property situated anywhere in the United Kingdom or elsewhere; and
  - (c) rights and liabilities under the law of any part of the United Kingdom or of any country or territory outside the United Kingdom.
- (5) It is hereby declared for the avoidance of doubt that the rights and liabilities capable of being so transferred include rights and liabilities of the IBA under any agreement or arrangement for the payment of pensions, allowances or gratuities.
- (6) An obligation imposed by a provision included in a transfer scheme by virtue of sub-paragraph (1)(c) shall be enforceable by civil proceedings brought by the other relevant transferee in question for an injunction or interdict or for any other appropriate relief.

#### *Effect of transfer scheme*

- 4 (1) Where a transfer scheme comes into force on the transfer date, this sub-paragraph shall have effect on that date so as to transfer to each of the relevant transferees, in accordance with the scheme's provisions and without further assurance, such of the property, rights and liabilities of the IBA as are allocated to that transferee by the scheme.
- (2) A transaction of any description which is effected in pursuance of any provision included in a transfer scheme in accordance with this Schedule shall be binding

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

on all persons, notwithstanding that it would, apart from this sub-paragraph, have required the consent or concurrence of any person other than the IBA or any relevant transferee.

- (3) Where apart from this sub-paragraph any person would have power, in consequence of anything done or likely to be done by or under this Act, to terminate or modify an interest or right which is vested in the IBA at the passing of this Act, then—
  - (a) for the purposes of the transfer of the interest or right in accordance with a transfer scheme, that power shall not be exercisable in relation to the interest or right at any time before its transfer in accordance with the scheme; and
  - (b) without prejudice to any other provision of this Schedule, that power shall be exercisable in relation to the interest or right after its transfer only in so far as the scheme provides for it to be transferred subject to the power.
- (4) Where, in consequence of any transfer made in accordance with a transfer scheme, all the property, rights and liabilities comprised in a particular part of the IBA's undertaking are transferred to a relevant transferee—
  - (a) the <sup>M42</sup>Transfer of Undertakings (Protection of Employment) Regulations 1981 shall apply to the transfer, whether or not they would otherwise so apply, and
  - (b) that undertaking shall accordingly (whether or not it would otherwise be so regarded) be regarded for the purposes of those Regulations as an undertaking in the nature of a commercial venture.

#### Marginal Citations

M42 S.I. 1981/1794.

#### *Third parties affected by transfer scheme*

- 5 (1) This paragraph applies where—
  - (a) in consequence of any transfer made in accordance with a transfer scheme, any right or liability of a person (other than the IBA or any relevant transferee) which was enforceable against or by the IBA becomes enforceable against or by one or more relevant transferees; and
  - (b) apart from this Schedule that person's consent or concurrence would have been required for that right or liability to become so enforceable;and in this paragraph references to a third party are references to any such person.
- (2) Subject to sub-paragraph (3), the IBA shall take reasonable steps to identify any third party and to notify him of the effect of the transfer in question on any right or liability of his falling within sub-paragraph (1), and of the effect of sub-paragraph (4).
- (3) A transfer scheme may provide that the duties imposed on the IBA by sub-paragraph (2) in relation to a transfer shall be imposed instead on such one of the relevant transferees as may be specified in the scheme.
- (4) Where—
  - (a) any right or liability of a third party has become enforceable against or by more than one relevant transferee, and
  - (b) the value of any property or interest of the third party is diminished thereby,

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

such compensation as is just shall be paid to the third party by one or more of the relevant transferees.

- (5) Any dispute as to whether, and if so how much, compensation is payable under sub-paragraph (4), or as to the person to or by whom it shall be paid, shall be referred to and determined by—
- (a) an arbitrator appointed by the Lord Chancellor; or
  - (b) where the proceedings are to be held in Scotland, an arbiter appointed by the Lord President of the Court of Session.

*Supplemental provisions of scheme*

- 6 (1) A transfer scheme may contain supplemental, consequential and transitional provisions for the purposes of, or in connection with, the division effected or any other provision made by the scheme.
- (2) Without prejudice to the generality of sub-paragraph (1) above, a transfer scheme may provide—
- (a) that for purposes connected with any transfer made in accordance with the scheme a relevant transferee to whom anything is transferred in accordance with the scheme is to be treated as the same person in law as the IBA;
  - (b) that, so far as may be necessary for the purposes of or in connection with any such transfer, agreements made, transactions effected and other things done by or in relation to the IBA are to be treated as made, effected or done by or in relation to the relevant transferee to whom the transfer is made;
  - (c) that, so far as may be necessary for the purposes of or in connection with any such transfer, references in any agreement (whether or not in writing) or in any deed, bond, instrument or other document to, or to any member or officer of, the IBA are to have effect with such modifications as are specified in the scheme;
  - (d) that proceedings commenced by or against the IBA are to be continued by or against such one of the relevant transferees as the scheme may provide in relation to any circumstances specified or described in it;
  - (e) that the effect of any transfer made in accordance with the scheme in relation to contracts of employment with the IBA is not to be to terminate any such contracts but is to be that periods of employment with the IBA are to count for all purposes as periods of employment with the relevant transferee to whom the transfer is made;
  - (f) that disputes as to the effect of the scheme between any of the relevant transferees are to be referred to such arbitration as may be specified in or determined under the scheme;
  - (g) that determinations on such arbitrations, and certificates given jointly by all or any two of the relevant transferees as to the effect of the scheme as between the transferees concerned, are to be conclusive for all purposes.

*Vesting of IBA's property after coming into force of scheme*

- 7 (1) A transfer scheme may provide for the imposition of duties—
- (a) on the IBA, and
  - (b) on all or any of the relevant transferees,



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

to take all such steps as may be requisite to secure that the vesting in any of those transferees, by virtue of the scheme, of any foreign property, right or liability is effective under the relevant foreign law.

- (2) The provisions of a transfer scheme may require the IBA to comply with any directions of any of the relevant transferees in performing any duty imposed on the IBA by virtue of a provision included in the scheme by virtue of sub-paragraph (1).
- (3) A transfer scheme may provide that, until the vesting of any foreign property, right or liability of the IBA in a relevant transferee is effective under the relevant foreign law, it shall be the duty of the IBA to hold that property or right for the benefit of, or to discharge that liability on behalf of, that transferee.
- (4) Nothing in any provision included in a transfer scheme by virtue of this paragraph shall be taken as prejudicing the effect under the law of any part of the United Kingdom of the vesting in a relevant transferee, by virtue of the scheme, of any foreign property, right or liability.
- (5) The IBA shall have all such powers as may be requisite for the performance of any duty imposed on them by any provision included in a transfer scheme by virtue of this paragraph; but such a scheme may require a relevant transferee to act on behalf of the IBA (so far as possible) for the purposes of, or in connection with, the performance of any such duty in relation to any property, right or liability vested in the transferee by virtue of the scheme.
- (6) A transfer scheme may provide that any foreign property, rights or liabilities that are acquired or incurred by the IBA after the scheme comes into force are immediately to become property, rights or liabilities of such one of the relevant transferees as is specified in the scheme; and such a scheme may make the same provision in relation to any such property, rights or liabilities as can be made, by virtue of the preceding provisions of this paragraph, in relation to foreign property, rights and liabilities vested in the IBA when the scheme comes into force.
- (7) References in this paragraph to any foreign property, right or liability are references to any property, right or liability as respects which any issue arising in any proceedings would have to be determined (in accordance with the rules of private international law) by reference to the law of a country or territory outside the United Kingdom.
- (8) Any expenses incurred by the IBA in consequence of any provision included in a transfer scheme by virtue of this paragraph shall be met by the relevant transferees in such proportions as may be determined by or under the scheme.

*Certificate of Secretary of State as to vesting of property etc.*

- 8 (1) Subject to sub-paragraph (2), a certificate issued by the Secretary of State to the effect that any property, right or liability of the IBA vested at a particular time by virtue of this Schedule in one or more of the relevant transferees shall be conclusive evidence of the matters stated in the certificate.
- (2) Nothing in any such certificate shall prejudice the operation of a certificate issued by virtue of a provision included in a transfer scheme by virtue of paragraph 6(2) (g) above.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

*Power of Secretary of State to control division of IBA's pension fund*

- 9 (1) If the Secretary of State so determines, the trustees of the Independent Broadcasting Authority Staff Pensions Plan shall refer to him, before such date as he may specify, the division and distribution of the relevant assets which is to be made by them for the purpose of making a transfer payment to a pension scheme established by the nominated company for its employees; and, if he does so, any such division and distribution of those assets and liabilities shall not be made by the trustees except—
- (a) with his consent, or
  - (b) in accordance with an order made by him under sub-paragraph (2).
- (2) Where any such division and distribution is referred to the Secretary of State under sub-paragraph (1), he may by order direct that the relevant assets shall be divided and distributed by the trustees in such manner, and at such time, as is specified in the order; and any provision of—
- (a) the Plan referred to in sub-paragraph (1), or
  - (b) any enactment relating to occupational pension schemes, including any enactment relating to transfer values,
- shall not have effect to the extent that it is inconsistent with the division and distribution of those assets in accordance with any such order.
- (3) When making an order under sub-paragraph (2) the Secretary of State shall have regard to the interests of all classes of persons who are for the time being beneficiaries or potential beneficiaries under the Plan referred to in sub-paragraph (1).
- (4) In this paragraph—
- “the relevant assets” means the assets held by or on behalf of the trustees; and
- “the trustees” means the trustees of the Plan referred to in sub-paragraph (1).
- (5) An order under sub-paragraph (2) shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

*Discharge by IBA of contingent etc. liabilities*

- 10 (1) This paragraph applies to any liabilities to which the IBA are subject on or after the transfer date, being liabilities which—
- (a) had not become enforceable against the IBA before that date, and
  - (b) are not specifically and exclusively referable to any particular part or parts of the undertaking of the IBA which has or have been transferred in accordance with a transfer scheme to one or more of the relevant transferees.
- (2) Any sums required by the IBA for the purpose of discharging any liabilities to which this paragraph applies shall be paid to them by the Secretary of State out of money provided by Parliament.
- (3) Any payments made to the IBA under sub-paragraph (2) may be so made subject to such conditions as the Secretary of State may determine with the approval of the Treasury.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Final accounts and annual report of IBA*

- 11 (1) The IBA shall, as soon as possible after the transfer date, prepare such a statement of accounts as is mentioned in subsection (1) of section 42 of the Act 1981 (accounts and audit) in respect of the period between—
- (a) the end of the financial year for which the last statement of accounts was prepared by them under that section, and
  - (b) the transfer date,
- whether that period is a financial year or not; and that section shall continue to apply on and after that date in relation to the auditing of accounts kept in accordance with that subsection in respect of that period.
- (2) The IBA shall, as soon as possible after the transfer date, prepare and transmit to the Secretary of State, in accordance with section 43 of that Act (annual reports), such a report as is mentioned in subsection (1) of that section in respect of the period between—
- (a) the end of the financial year for which the last such report was prepared by them under that section, and
  - (b) the transfer date,
- whether that period is a financial year or not.
- (3) Subsection (2) of that section shall apply to any such report as if the references to the statement of accounts for the year in question included references to the statement of accounts prepared in accordance with sub-paragraph (1) above.
- (4) The Secretary of State shall lay copies of any such report before each House of Parliament.
- (5) Any expenses incurred by the IBA under this paragraph shall be met by such one or more of the relevant transferees, and (if more than one) in such proportions, as may be determined by or under a transfer scheme.

SCHEDULE 10

Section 128.

SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS RELATING TO DISSOLUTION OF CABLE AUTHORITY

*Provisions as to vesting of property etc. of Cable Authority*

- 1 (1) Sub-paragraph (2) below shall have effect for the purposes of, or in connection with, the vesting in the Commission by virtue of section 128(1) of this Act of property, rights or liabilities of the Cable Authority.
- (2) Any agreement made, transaction effected or other thing done by or in relation to the Cable Authority which is in force or effective immediately before the transfer date shall have effect as from that date as if made, effected or done by or in relation to the Commission, in all respects as if the Commission were the same person, in law, as the Cable Authority; and accordingly references to the Cable Authority—
- (a) in any agreement (whether or not in writing) and in any deed, bond or instrument,
  - (b) in any process or other document issued, prepared or employed for the purpose of any proceeding before any court or other tribunal or authority, and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) in any other document whatever (other than an enactment), shall be taken as from the transfer date as referring to the Commission.
- 2 (1) Where immediately before the transfer date there is in force an agreement which—
- (a) confers or imposes on the Cable Authority any rights or liabilities which vest in the Commission by virtue of section 128(1), and
  - (b) refers (in whatever terms and whether expressly or by implication) to a member or officer of the Cable Authority,
- the agreement shall have effect, in relation to anything falling to be done on or after the transfer date, as if for that reference there were substituted a reference to such person as the Commission may appoint or, in default of appointment, to the member or employee of the Commission who corresponds as nearly as possible to the member or officer of the Authority in question.
- (2) References in this paragraph to an agreement include references to a deed, bond or other instrument.

#### *Transfer of employees*

- 3 (1) It is hereby declared for the avoidance of doubt that—
- (a) the effect of section 128(1) in relation to any contract of employment with the Cable Authority in force immediately before the transfer date is merely to modify that contract (as from that date) by substituting the Commission as the employer (and not to terminate the contract or vary it in any other way); and
  - (b) that provision is effective to vest the rights and liabilities of the Cable Authority under any agreement or arrangement for the payment of pensions, allowances or gratuities in the Commission along with all the other rights and liabilities of the Authority.
- (2) Accordingly, for the purposes of any such agreement or arrangement as it has effect as from the transfer date, any period of employment with the Cable Authority shall count as employment with the Commission.
- (3) The Transfer of Undertakings <sup>M43</sup>(Protection of Employment) Regulations 1981 shall apply to the transfer to the Commission, by virtue of section 128(1), of the undertaking of the Cable Authority, whether or not they would otherwise so apply; and that undertaking shall accordingly (whether or not it would otherwise be so regarded) be regarded for the purposes of those Regulations as an undertaking in the nature of a commercial venture.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M43** [S.I. 1981/1794](#).

#### *Final accounts and annual report of Cable Authority*

- 4 (1) The Cable Authority shall, as soon as possible after the transfer date, prepare such a statement of accounts as is mentioned in subsection (1) of section 20 of the <sup>M44</sup>Cable and Broadcasting Act 1984 (accounts and audit) in respect of the period between—
- (a) the end of the financial year for which the last statement of accounts was prepared by them under that section, and

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (b) the transfer date,  
whether that period is a financial year or not; and that section shall continue to apply on and after that date in relation to the auditing of accounts kept in accordance with that subsection in respect of that period.
- (2) The Cable Authority shall, as soon as possible after the transfer date, prepare and transmit to the Secretary of State, in accordance with section 21 of that Act (annual reports), such a report as is mentioned in subsection (1) of that section in respect of the period between—
- (a) the end of the financial year for which the last such report was prepared by them under that section, and
- (b) the transfer date,  
whether that period is a financial year or not.
- (3) Subsection (2) of that section shall apply to any such report as if the references to the statement of accounts for the year in question included references to the statement of accounts prepared in accordance with sub-paragraph (1) above.
- (4) The Secretary of State shall lay copies of any such report before each House of Parliament.
- (5) Any expenses incurred by the Cable Authority under this paragraph shall be met by the Commission.

**Marginal Citations**

**M44** 1984 c. 46.

SCHEDULE 11

Section 129.

TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS RELATING TO IBA’S BROADCASTING SERVICES

**PART I**

GENERAL

In this Schedule—

“the <sup>M45</sup>1981 Act” means the Broadcasting Act 1981;

“the Authority” means the Radio Authority;

“Channel 4” means the additional broadcasting service referred to in section 10(1) of the 1981 Act, but excluding so much of that service as consisted, immediately before the transfer date, in the broadcasting of programmes for reception wholly or mainly in Wales, and “on Channel 4” means in the said service;

“the interim period” means the period referred to in paragraph 1(1) in Part II of this Schedule;

“local licence” and “local service” have the same meaning as in Part III of this Act;

“S4C” means the television broadcasting service referred to in section 57(1) of this Act, and “on S4C” means in that service.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Marginal Citations**

**M45** 1981 c. 68.

**Marginal Citations**

**M45** 1981 c. 68.

## PART II

### TELEVISION BROADCASTING SERVICES TO BE PROVIDED BY COMMISSION

*IBA’s television broadcasting services to be provided by Commission during interim period*

- 1 (1) During the period beginning with the transfer date and ending with 31st December 1992 (referred to in this Schedule as “the interim period”) the following television broadcasting services, namely—
- (a) ITV,
  - (b) Channel 4,
  - (c) any teletext service provided by the IBA down to the transfer date, and
  - (d) any DBS services so provided,
- shall be provided by the Commission in accordance with this Part of this Schedule.
- (2) The services provided by the Commission as mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) shall be of high quality both as to the transmission and as to the matter transmitted and (subject to paragraph 3(1) below) shall be provided by the Commission for so much of the United Kingdom as may from time to time be reasonably practicable.
- (3) During the interim period the following provisions of the 1981 Act, namely—
- (a) section 2(2),
  - (b) sections 3 to 9,
  - (c) sections 14(3) and 15,
  - (d) sections 28 and 29, and
  - (e) Schedule 2,
- shall (subject to the provisions of this Part of this Schedule) have effect in connection with the provision of those services by the Commission as they had effect, immediately before the transfer date, in connection with the provision of those services by the IBA.
- (4) The provisions specified in sub-paragraph (3) above shall have effect in accordance with that sub-paragraph with the following general modifications, namely—
- (a) any reference to the IBA shall (subject to paragraph (b) and sub-paragraph (8) below) be construed as a reference to the Commission; and
  - (b) any reference to any of the broadcasting stations used by the IBA shall be construed as a reference to any of the broadcasting stations used in the provision of any of the services provided by the Commission as mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) above.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (5) Section 3(2)(b) of the 1981 Act shall have effect in accordance with sub-paragraph (3) above with the substitution of the following sub-paragraph for sub-paragraph (ii)—

“(ii) by reason of the termination of any contract with a programme contractor;”and.

- (6) Section 8 of the 1981 Act shall have effect in accordance with sub-paragraph (3) above with the omission of subsections (6) to (9) of that section; but (except in the case of any programme to which the Commission determine that the following prohibition is not to apply) none of the broadcasting services provided by the Commission as mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) above shall include a programme which is sponsored by any person whose business consists, wholly or mainly—

- (a) in the manufacture or supply of a product, or
- (b) in the provision of a service,

the advertising of which in any such broadcasting service is prohibited by virtue of any provision of that Act (as applied by this paragraph) or of the code under section 9 of that Act (as so applied).

- (7) Section 9 of the 1981 Act shall have effect in accordance with sub-paragraph (3) above as if—

- (a) in subsection (1)(a), after “standards and practice in advertising” there were inserted “ and in the sponsoring of programmes ”;
- (b) in subsection (1)(b), there were inserted at the end “ and as regards the sponsoring of programmes so broadcast ”; and
- (c) after “methods of advertising” (wherever occurring) there were inserted “ or sponsorship ”;

and the Commission may give effect to paragraph (a) above by making modifications to the code in force under section 9 immediately before the transfer date.

- (8) Section 29(5) of the 1981 Act shall have effect in accordance with sub-paragraph (3) above as if the reference to requiring the IBA by notice in writing to do, or not to do, anything mentioned in that provision were a reference to requiring the Commission by notice in writing to direct any programme contractor specified in the notice—

- (a) to do, or not to do, that thing, or
- (b) (if the context so requires) to secure that that thing is or is not done.

- (9) Without prejudice to the generality of sub-paragraph (5) of paragraph 2 below, the Commission may make such variations of a contract to which sub-paragraph (1) of that paragraph applies as appear to them to be appropriate for facilitating or ensuring compliance with any direction or notice given to or served on them under section 28 or 29 of the 1981 Act (as applied by this paragraph).

*General provisions about programme contracts and programme contractors*

- 2 (1) Sections 2(3) and 14(2) of the 1981 Act shall have effect in relation to the Commission and the programmes and teletext transmissions broadcast by them in the services provided by them as mentioned in paragraph 1(1) above as they had effect immediately before the transfer date in relation to the IBA and the programmes and teletext transmissions broadcast by them in the services mentioned in paragraph 1(1); and where a contract between the IBA and a programme contractor or a teletext contractor is effective immediately before that date—



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (a) the contract shall continue to have effect on and after that date (subject to and in accordance with this Part of this Schedule) as a contract between the Commission and that contractor and any other party to it, and
- (b) any reference in the contract to the IBA shall accordingly be construed, in relation to any time falling on or after that date, as a reference to the Commission.

(2) During the interim period the following provisions of the 1981 Act, namely—

- (a) sections 19(1) to (2B) and 20(2) to (9),
- (b) sections 21 to 25,
- (c) sections 32 to 35, and
- (d) Schedule 4,

shall have effect in relation to any contract to which sub-paragraph (1) applies, or (as the case may be) in relation to the programme contractor or teletext contractor under any such contract, subject to the modifications specified in sub-paragraph (3) and subject also to paragraphs 4 and 5 below.

(3) The modifications of the provisions specified in sub-paragraph (2) are as follows—

- (a) any reference in those provisions to the IBA shall (subject to paragraphs (b) and (c) below) be construed as a reference to the Commission;
- (b) sections 21 and 23 shall have effect as if any reference to the IBA’s obligation to transmit the programmes supplied by a programme contractor were a reference to the right and the duty of the programme contractor under his contract to provide programmes for broadcasting in one of the services provided by the Commission as mentioned in paragraph 1(1) above;
- (c) section 22 shall have effect as if any reference to the programmes, or television programmes, supplied to the IBA were a reference to the programmes, or television programmes, supplied for broadcasting in one of those services; and
- (d) section 32(1)(a) shall have effect as if—
  - (i) for “the branch” there were substituted “ the part ”, and
  - (ii) for “section 36(2) in relation to that branch” there were substituted “ paragraph 12(1) of Schedule 1 to the Broadcasting Act 1990 in relation to that part ”.

(4) The Commission shall do all that they can to secure that during the interim period no person who is, or is an associate of, a TV programme contractor—

- (a) holds any local licence, or
- (b) controls any body which holds any such licence, or
- (c) is a participant with more than a 20 per cent. interest in a body corporate which holds any such licence,

in a case where the area or locality for which the licensed service is to be provided is to a significant extent the same as the area for which television programmes are to be provided under the TV programme contractor’s contract; and this sub-paragraph shall be construed in accordance with Part I of Schedule 2 to this Act.

(5) The Commission may make such variations of a contract to which sub-paragraph (1) applies as appear to them to be appropriate in consequence of any of the provisions of this Part of this Schedule.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Provisions relating to Channel 4*

- 3
- (1) Channel 4 shall be provided by the Commission during the interim period for so much of England, Scotland and Northern Ireland as may from time to time be reasonably practicable.
  - (2) The programmes (other than advertisements) broadcast by the Commission on Channel 4 shall (without prejudice to section 12(2) of the 1981 Act, as applied by this paragraph) be provided by the Commission.
  - (3) In consequence of sub-paragraph (2), sections 3(2) and 6 of the 1981 Act (as applied by paragraph 1 above) do not apply in the case of Channel 4.
  - (4) Subject to the modifications specified in sub-paragraph (5), sections 11 to 13 of the 1981 Act shall have effect in connection with the provision of Channel 4 by the Commission during the interim period as they had effect immediately before the transfer date in connection with the provision of that service by the IBA.
  - (5) The modifications of the provisions specified in sub-paragraph (4) are as follows—
    - (a) any reference in those provisions to the IBA shall (subject to paragraph (c) below) be construed as a reference to the Commission;
    - (b) section 12(1) shall have effect as if for the reference to paragraph 4(1) of Schedule 1 to the 1981 Act there were substituted a reference to paragraph 1(3) of Schedule 1 to this Act;
    - (c) section 12(2) shall have effect as if for the reference to a subsidiary of the IBA formed by them for the purpose there were substituted a reference to a subsidiary of the Commission (being the body corporate formed by the IBA in pursuance of that provision); and
    - (d) in section 13, subsection (4) shall (in consequence of paragraph 1(6) above) have effect with the omission of paragraph (c).

*Provisions relating to teletext services*

- 4
- (1) For the purposes of—
    - (a) this Part of this Schedule, and
    - (b) the provisions of the 1981 Act which have effect in accordance with this Part of this Schedule,teletext transmissions shall not be treated as programmes; but this is subject to sub-paragraph (2) and to any of those provisions of the 1981 Act which expressly requires such transmissions to be so treated for the purposes of any particular provision.
  - (2) In paragraphs 1(8) and 2(3)(b) above and 10 below and in the provisions specified in Part I of Schedule 3 to the 1981 Act (as they have effect in accordance with this Part of this Schedule)—
    - (a) references to programmes or to television programmes shall be read as including references to teletext transmissions; and
    - (b) references to programme contractors shall be read as including references to teletext contractors.
  - (3) In section 3(2) of the 1981 Act, in its application to teletext transmissions or teletext contractors by virtue of sub-paragraph (2), the reference to section 2(3) of that Act shall be read as a reference to section 14(2) of that Act (as it has effect by virtue of paragraph 2(1) above).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (4) The following provisions of the 1981 Act, namely—
- (a) section 20(2)(b) and (3), and
  - (b) section 22,
- shall not have effect by virtue of paragraph 2(2) above in relation to teletext contractors or their contracts.

*Provisions relating to DBS services*

- 5 (1) The following provisions of the 1981 Act, namely—
- (a) in section 2(2), paragraph (c) and in paragraph (b) the words “and a proper balance and wide range in their subject matter”,
  - (b) in section 4(1), paragraph (d) and so much of paragraph (b) as relates to the giving of a sufficient amount of time in the programmes to news and news features,
  - (c) section 20(2)(b) and (3),
  - (d) section 22, and
  - (e) section 24,
- shall not have effect by virtue of paragraph 1(3) or 2(2) above in connection with the provision of DBS services by the Commission or (as the case may be) in relation to DBS contractors or their contracts.
- (2) Every contract between the Commission and a DBS programme contractor shall contain all such provisions as the Commission think necessary or expedient to ensure that the financial and other arrangements for the provision of the satellite transponder are made by the contractor.
- (3) For the purpose of enabling a DBS programme or teletext contractor to make charges for the reception of programmes provided by him or transmissions containing material so provided, the Commission may, notwithstanding anything in the 1981 Act as it has effect in accordance with this Part of this Schedule, broadcast the programmes or transmissions in such a form (whether scrambled, encoded or otherwise) as will prevent persons from receiving them unless they obtain from the contractor the means of doing so.
- (4) Where under the power conferred by sub-paragraph (3) the Commission broadcast programmes or transmissions in such a form as is mentioned in that sub-paragraph, nothing in the 1981 Act (as it so has effect) shall be taken as requiring the Commission to permit advertisements to be included in the programmes or transmissions.
- (5) Where any service falling within section 46(1) of this Act is provided during the interim period on any of the spare capacity within the frequencies on which any DBS services are provided by the Commission in accordance with this Part of this Schedule, that service is licensable under section 47 of this Act as a licensable programme service, and not otherwise.

*General provisions relating to S4C*

- 6 (1) Subject to the provisions of this paragraph and paragraph 7 below, S4C shall be provided during the interim period by the Welsh Authority in accordance with Chapter VI of Part I of this Act.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) During that period—
  - (a) any reference in section 57(3) or 58(2) or (4) of this Act to Channel 4 shall be construed as a reference to the Channel 4 service provided by the Commission in accordance with paragraph 1 above; and
  - (b) the reference in section 58(2) to the Channel Four Television Corporation shall be construed as a reference to the Commission.
- (3) So much of section 4(1)(d) of the 1981 Act (as applied by paragraph 1 above) as relates to cases where another language as well as English is in common use among persons served by the station or stations in question, shall, in the case of programmes broadcast by the Commission on ITV for reception wholly or mainly in Wales, apply only to languages other than Welsh.

#### *Broadcasting of advertisements on S4C*

- 7 (1) During the interim period the programmes broadcast by the Welsh Authority on S4C for reception in the area of any TV programme contractor may, so long as the provisions of the 1981 Act (as applied by this Part of this Schedule) are complied with in relation thereto, include advertisements provided for insertion therein by that contractor in consideration of payments to him.
- (2) Any such TV programme contractor shall have the right to provide advertisements for inclusion in the programmes broadcast on S4C for reception in his area so long as—
  - (a) he makes the required payments to the Commission, and
  - (b) the provisions of the 1981 Act (as applied by this Part of this Schedule) are complied with in relation to such advertisements.
- (3) In sub-paragraph (2) “the required payments” means such payments as are required to be paid by the programme contractor by virtue of any provision of his contract included in pursuance of section 13(2) of the 1981 Act.
- (4) For any period in which programmes are to be broadcast on S4C for reception in the area of a TV programme contractor it shall be the duty of the Welsh Authority to make suitable arrangements—
  - (a) for the contractor to receive advance information about the programmes other than advertisements which are to be so broadcast in that period and about the periods which will be available for the broadcasting of advertisements; and
  - (b) for the inclusion, in the programmes so broadcast in that period, of advertisements provided for the purpose by the contractor in the exercise of his right to do so under sub-paragraph (2).
- (5) No period allocated by the Welsh Authority to the broadcasting of advertisements on S4C shall be located—
  - (a) in any break in any programme supplied to them by the BBC; or
  - (b) without the consent of the BBC, at the beginning or end of any such programme.
- (6) Orders for the inclusion by a TV programme contractor of advertisements among those provided by him for insertion in the programmes broadcast on S4C may be received either through advertising or other agents or direct from the advertiser.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (7) During the interim period—
- (a) section 8(5) of the 1981 Act shall apply in relation to the programmes broadcast by the Welsh Authority on S4C as that provision applies, in accordance with this Part of this Schedule, in relation to the programmes broadcast by the Commission on ITV;
  - (b) the Commission shall do all that they can to secure that the provisions of—
    - (i) Schedule 2 to the 1981 Act (as it applies in accordance with this Part of this Schedule), and
    - (ii) the code under section 9 of that Act,
 are complied with in relation to the advertisements broadcast by the Welsh Authority on S4C and in relation to the sponsorship of programmes so broadcast;
  - (c) section 9(2) and (3) of that Act shall apply accordingly in relation to advertisements and other programmes so broadcast; and
  - (d) (except in the case of any programme to which the Welsh Authority determine that this paragraph is not to apply) S4C shall not contain any programme which is sponsored by any person whose business consists, wholly or mainly—
    - (i) in the manufacture or supply of a product, or
    - (ii) in the provision of a service,
 the advertising of which on ITV is prohibited by virtue of any provision of that Act or of the code under section 9 of that Act.
- (8) So long as any directions given under section 9(4) of the 1981 Act (whether by the IBA or by the Commission) remain in force, the Welsh Authority shall, in broadcasting advertisements on S4C, give effect to the provisions of the directions as if they were provisions regulating the times when advertisements are to be allowed to be broadcast on S4C.
- (9) Section 60(1) to (4) and (6) of this Act shall not have effect in relation to the Welsh Authority during the interim period.

*Financing of S4C during interim period*

- 8 (1) For each financial year, or part of a financial year, falling within the interim period the Commission shall (unless any payment has already been made in respect of it under section 39(1) of the 1981 Act) pay to the Welsh Authority—
- (a) such sum or sums as may be agreed between them to be appropriate for enabling the Welsh Authority to meet their reasonable outgoings, or
  - (b) in default of such agreement, such sum or sums as the Secretary of State may determine to be appropriate for that purpose.
- (2) For the purposes of section 32(1)(a) of the 1981 Act (as applied by paragraph 2 above) all sums paid by the Commission to the Welsh Authority in pursuance of subparagraph (1) above shall be treated as expenditure properly incurred in respect of the part of the Commission's undertaking which consists of the provision of television broadcasting services.
- (3) In deciding from time to time whether to make any, and if so what, use of his power under subsection (8) of section 32 of the 1981 Act (as so applied) to amend by order subsections (4) and (5) of that section the Secretary of State may have regard to

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

any increase in the aggregate amount of the payments to be made under the head described in subsection (1)(a) of that section which is attributable to the provisions of sub-paragraph (1).

- (4) The provisions applied to the Welsh Authority by section 52(2) of the 1981 Act shall continue to apply to them on and after the transfer date in relation to any financial year ending before that date; and paragraphs 12 and 13 of Schedule 6 to this Act shall accordingly apply in relation to any subsequent financial year.

*Delivery of programmes by means of local delivery services*

- 9 Part II of this Act shall have effect as if section 72(2) of this Act included a reference to any television broadcasting service provided by the Commission in accordance with this Part of this Schedule.

*Provisions relating to Broadcasting Complaints Commission*

- 10 (1) Part V of this Act shall have effect as if—
- (a) section 143(2) of this Act included a reference to any television programme broadcast by the Commission during the interim period;
  - (b) (subject to sub-paragraph (2)) the Commission were—
    - (i) in relation to the provision by them of television broadcasting services in accordance with this Part of this Schedule, and
    - (ii) in relation to the broadcasting of advertisements on S4C during the interim period,a broadcasting body within the meaning of that Part of this Act; and
  - (c) the Welsh Authority accordingly were not a broadcasting body within the meaning of that Part of this Act in relation to any such broadcasting of advertisements on S4C.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1)(b) shall not have effect for the purposes of section 145(5) of this Act; and the Commission shall make such variations of any contract to which paragraph 2(1) above applies as appear to them to be appropriate—
- (a) for requiring the programme contractor under that contract—
    - (i) in the case of every programme provided by him which is broadcast by the Commission during the interim period, to retain a recording of that programme for the period of 90 days beginning with the broadcast,
    - (ii) if requested to do so by the Commission for the purpose of enabling them to comply with any requirement imposed on them in pursuance of section 145(4), 155(3) or 167(1) of this Act, to produce any such recording to them, and
    - (iii) if requested to do so by the Commission for the purpose of enabling them to comply with any requirement imposed on them in pursuance of section 145(4) or 155(3) of this Act, to produce to them any transcript of any such programme which he is able to produce to them; and
  - (b) for ensuring compliance by the programme contractor with any request to which section 145(7) of this Act applies which may be made to him by the BCC.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (3) For the financial year which includes the commencement of section 149 of this Act, and each subsequent financial year falling wholly or partly within the interim period, the Secretary of State shall notify to the Commission the sum which he considers to be the appropriate contribution by that body, in respect of the programme contractors under contracts to which paragraph 2(1) above applies, towards the expenses of the BCC; and the Commission shall pay to the Secretary of State any sum notified to them under this sub-paragraph.
- (4) Paragraph 2(1)(g)(i) of Schedule 13 to this Act shall have effect during the interim period as if the reference to the BBC or the Welsh Authority included a reference to the Commission.
- (5) In this paragraph “the BCC” means the Broadcasting Complaints Commission.

*Provisions relating to Broadcasting Standards Council*

- 11 Part VI of this Act shall have effect during the interim period as if—
  - (a) section 152(2) of this Act included a reference to any television programme broadcast by the Commission during that period;
  - (b) the Commission were—
    - (i) in relation to the provision by them of television broadcasting services in accordance with this Part of this Schedule, and
    - (ii) in relation to the broadcasting of advertisements on S4C during the interim period,
 a broadcasting body within the meaning of that Part of this Act; and
  - (c) the Welsh Authority accordingly were not a broadcasting body within the meaning of that Part of this Act in relation to any such broadcasting of advertisements on S4C.

*Supplementary provisions*

- 12 (1) Any code, notice, direction, approval or other thing drawn up, given or done by or in relation to the IBA—
  - (a) in pursuance of a provision of the 1981 Act which has effect during the interim period in accordance with this Part of this Schedule, and
  - (b) in connection with any of the IBA’s television broadcasting services,
 shall, if in force or effective immediately before the transfer date, have effect as from that date for the relevant purposes as if drawn up, given or done by or in relation to the Commission.
- (2) Anything which immediately before that date was in the process of being done by or in relation to the IBA may, if it was being so done as mentioned in paragraphs (a) and (b) of sub-paragraph (1), be continued on or after that date by or in relation to the Commission.
- (3) Sections 61 and 62 of the 1981 Act shall have effect during the interim period for the relevant purposes as if any reference to the IBA were a reference to the Commission.
- (4) In this paragraph “the relevant purposes” means the purposes of the 1981 Act as it has effect during the interim period in accordance with this Part of this Schedule.



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

### PART III

#### REPLACEMENT OF DBS CONTRACTS BY LICENCES UNDER PART I

##### *Replacement of DBS programme contract by domestic satellite licence*

- 1 (1) Where any contract which, by virtue of paragraph 2(1) in Part II of this Schedule, has effect as a contract between the Commission and a DBS programme contractor is effective immediately before the relevant date—
- (a) the contract shall cease to have effect on that date; but
  - (b) the contractor shall be granted by the Commission as from that date a licence under Part I of this Act to provide a domestic satellite service which, in accordance with section 44(2) of this Act, authorises the provision of a multichannel service on the frequencies on which any DBS services consisting of programmes provided by him under the contract were being provided by the Commission down to that date.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1) “multichannel service” means a service which to any extent consists in the simultaneous transmission of different programmes on different frequencies.
- (3) Any licence granted in pursuance of sub-paragraph (1) shall be so granted notwithstanding anything in sections 15 to 17 of this Act (as applied by section 44 of this Act); and nothing in section 19 of this Act (as so applied) shall apply to any such licence until such time (if any) as it is renewed in accordance with sub-paragraph (4).
- (4) Section 20 of this Act (as so applied) shall apply to any such licence as if—
- (a) in subsection (1), the first reference to a period of fifteen years were a reference to the period beginning with the relevant date and ending with the date on which the contract referred to in sub-paragraph (1) would have expired apart from that sub-paragraph;
  - (b) in subsection (6)(b), the words from “a different” to “as” were omitted; and
  - (c) in subsection (9)(a), the reference to any conditions included in the licence in pursuance of section 19 were a reference to any conditions so included in accordance with sub-paragraph (5) below.
- (5) Where any such licence is to be renewed in accordance with sub-paragraph (4), the Commission shall (notwithstanding section 3(4) of this Act) by notice served on the licence holder vary the licence, as from the date of its renewal, by including in it such conditions as appear to them to be necessary or expedient in consequence of sub-paragraph (3).
- (6) Section 3(3) shall, in its application in relation to any such licence, have effect—
- (a) with the omission of paragraph (a), and
  - (b) as if the reference to Part I of this Act included a reference to this Part of this Schedule.
- (7) Section 41 shall have effect in relation to any such licence with the omission of subsection (2); and the maximum amount which the holder of any such licence may be required to pay by way of a financial penalty imposed in pursuance of subsection (1)(a) of that section shall instead be the sum for the time being specified in section 45(6).

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (8) Except as provided in the preceding provisions of this paragraph, Part I of this Act applies to a licence granted in pursuance of this paragraph as it applies to any other licence to provide a domestic satellite service.
- (9) In this Part of this Schedule—
- (a) “the relevant date” means the day immediately following the end of the interim period; and
  - (b) “additional services licence” and “domestic satellite licence” have the same meaning as in Part I of this Act.

*Power to require licence holder to make additional payments under 1981 Act*

- 2 (1) The Secretary of State may by order provide for such of the provisions of sections 32 to 35 of, and Schedule 4 to, the 1981 Act as are specified in the order to have effect (subject to such modifications as are so specified)—
- (a) in relation to the holder of any licence granted in pursuance of paragraph 1 above, or
  - (b) in relation to any such licence,
- with a view to making provision for and in connection with the making by the holder of any such licence to the Commission of payments determined in accordance with section 32 of that Act in respect of profits or advertising revenue (or both) within the meaning of that section.
- (2) Any such order shall be so framed as to secure that, subject to such modifications as the Secretary of State considers appropriate and to sub-paragraph (4), the provisions of the 1981 Act applied by the order as mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a) and (b) so apply in a similar way to that in which they applied immediately before the relevant date in relation to a DBS programme contractor or (as the case may be) in relation to the contract of any such contractor.
- (3) Without prejudice to the generality of sub-paragraph (2), any such order shall provide for any excess of a DBS programme contractor's relevant expenditure over his relevant income to be carried forward and treated as relevant expenditure for the purpose of computing his profits as the holder of a licence granted in pursuance of paragraph 1 above.
- Expressions used in this sub-paragraph which are also used in Schedule 4 to the 1981 Act have the same meaning as in that Schedule.
- (4) The power of the Secretary of State to make an order under subsection (8) of section 32 of the 1981 Act shall include power to make an order amending any of the provisions of subsections (4) and (5) of that section in so far as they have effect, by virtue of sub-paragraph (1), in relation to the holder of a licence granted in pursuance of paragraph 1 above.
- (5) Where an order under sub-paragraph (1) comes into force at any time after the relevant date, the Commission shall (notwithstanding section 3(4) of this Act) by notice served on the licence holder vary any licence granted in pursuance of paragraph 1 above by including in it such conditions as appear to them to be necessary or expedient in consequence of the order.
- (6) Nothing in any such order shall impose on the holder of any such licence any liability to make any payment in respect of any time when any conditions included in the licence in accordance with paragraph 1(5) above are in force.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (7) An order shall not be made by the Secretary of State under sub-paragraph (1) unless a draft of it has been laid before and approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament.

*Replacement of DBS teletext contract by additional services licence*

- 3 (1) Where any contract which, by virtue of paragraph 2(1) in Part II of this Schedule, has effect as a contract between the Commission and a DBS teletext contractor is effective immediately before the relevant date—
- (a) the contract shall cease to have effect on that date; but
  - (b) the contractor shall be granted by the Commission as from that date an additional services licence under Part I of this Act which allocates for use under the licence all of the spare capacity within the frequencies on which any DBS services consisting of programmes provided by him as a DBS programme contractor were provided by the Commission down to that date.
- (2) Any such licence shall be so granted notwithstanding anything in sections 50 and 51 of this Act; and nothing in section 52 of this Act shall apply to any such licence until such time (if any) as it is renewed in accordance with sub-paragraph (3).
- (3) Section 53 of this Act shall apply to any such licence as if—
- (a) in subsection (1)(a), the reference to a period of ten years were a reference to the period beginning with the relevant date and ending with the date on which any contract to which paragraph 1(1) above applies and to which the DBS teletext contractor was a party immediately before the relevant date would have expired apart from that provision;
  - (b) subsection (3) were omitted;
  - (c) in subsection (5), paragraph (a) were omitted;
  - (d) in subsection (7)(b), the words from “a different” to “as” were omitted; and
  - (e) in subsection (10), the reference to any conditions included in the licence in pursuance of section 52 were a reference to any conditions so included in accordance with sub-paragraph (4) below.
- (4) Where any such licence is to be renewed in accordance with sub-paragraph (3), the Commission shall (notwithstanding section 3(4) of this Act) by notice served on the licence holder vary the licence, as from the date of its renewal, by including in it such conditions as appear to them to be necessary or expedient in consequence of sub-paragraph (2).
- (5) Section 3(3) shall, in its application in relation to any such licence, have effect—
- (a) with the omission of paragraph (a), and
  - (b) as if the reference to Part I of this Act included a reference to this Part of this Schedule.
- (6) Section 55 shall have effect in relation to any such licence with the omission of subsection (2); and the maximum amount which the holder of any such licence may be required to pay by way of a financial penalty imposed in pursuance of subsection (1) of that section shall instead be the sum for the time being specified in section 45(6).
- (7) In sub-paragraph (1)(b) above the reference to spare capacity within the frequencies referred to in that provision includes a reference to spare capacity within those frequencies which (not being spare capacity within the signals carrying a television

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

broadcasting service) is not spare capacity within the meaning of Part I of this Act; and references in that Part of this Act (however expressed) to the spare capacity authorised to be used under an additional services licence shall, in relation to any such licence as is mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(b), accordingly be construed as including a reference to spare capacity within those frequencies which is not spare capacity within the meaning of that Part of this Act.

- (8) Except as provided in the preceding provisions of this paragraph, Part I of this Act applies to a licence granted in pursuance of this paragraph as it applies to any other additional services licence.

## PART IV

### SOUND BROADCASTING SERVICES TO BE PROVIDED BY RADIO AUTHORITY

#### *Certain local sound broadcasting services of IBA to be provided by Radio Authority as from transfer date*

- 1 (1) So long as any contracts for the provision of local sound broadcasts continue in force on and after the transfer date by virtue of paragraph 2(1) below, the Authority shall provide, in accordance with this Part of this Schedule, local sound broadcasting services consisting in the broadcasting of programmes provided by the programme contractors under those contracts.
- (2) The services provided by the Authority as mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) shall be of high quality both as to the transmission and as to the matter transmitted, and shall be provided for the localities in the United Kingdom for which the programmes in question are to be provided by the programme contractors under their contracts.
- (3) As from the transfer date the following provisions of the 1981 Act, namely—
- (a) section 2(2),
  - (b) sections 3 to 9,
  - (c) sections 28 and 29, and
  - (d) Schedule 2,
- shall have effect in connection with the provision of those services by the Authority as they had effect, immediately before the transfer date, in connection with the provision of local sound broadcasting services by the IBA.
- (4) The provisions specified in sub-paragraph (3) above shall have effect in accordance with that sub-paragraph with the following general modifications, namely—
- (a) any reference to the IBA shall (subject to paragraph (b) and sub-paragraph (8) below) be construed as a reference to the Authority; and
  - (b) any reference to any of the broadcasting stations used by the IBA shall be construed as a reference to any of the broadcasting stations used in the provision of any of the services provided by the Authority as mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) above.
- (5) Section 3(2)(b) of the 1981 Act shall have effect in accordance with sub-paragraph (3) above with the substitution of the following sub-paragraph for sub-paragraph (ii)—
- “(ii) by reason of the termination of any contract with a programme contractor; and”.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (6) Section 8 of the 1981 Act shall have effect in accordance with sub-paragraph (3) above with the omission of subsections (6) to (9) of that section; but (except in the case of any programme to which the Authority determine that the following prohibition is not to apply) none of the broadcasting services provided by the Authority as mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) above shall include a programme which is sponsored by any person whose business consists, wholly or mainly—
- (a) in the manufacture or supply of a product, or
  - (b) in the provision of a service,
- the advertising of which in any such broadcasting service is prohibited by virtue of any provision of that Act (as applied by this paragraph) or of the code under section 9 of that Act (as so applied).
- (7) Section 9 of the 1981 Act shall have effect in accordance with sub-paragraph (3) above as if—
- (a) in subsection (1)(a), after “standards and practice in advertising” there were inserted “ and in the sponsoring of programmes ”;
  - (b) in subsection (1)(b), there were inserted at the end “ and as regards the sponsoring of programmes so broadcast ”; and
  - (c) after “methods of advertising” (wherever occurring) there were inserted “ or sponsorship ”;
- and the Authority may give effect to paragraph (a) above by making modifications to the code in force under section 9 immediately before the transfer date.
- (8) Section 29(5) of the 1981 Act shall have effect in accordance with sub-paragraph (3) above as if the reference to requiring the IBA by notice in writing to do, or not to do, anything mentioned in that provision were a reference to requiring the Authority by notice in writing to direct any programme contractor specified in the notice—
- (a) to do, or not to do, that thing, or
  - (b) (if the context so requires) to secure that that thing is or is not done.
- (9) Without prejudice to the generality of sub-paragraph (6) of paragraph 2 below, the Authority may make such variations of a contract to which sub-paragraph (1) of that paragraph applies as appear to them to be appropriate for facilitating or ensuring compliance with any direction or notice given to or served on them under section 28 or 29 of the 1981 Act (as applied by this paragraph).

#### *Preservation of certain local sound broadcasting contracts*

- 2 (1) Where—
- (a) the IBA has, at any time before the transfer date, entered into a contract with a programme contractor for the provision by the contractor of local sound broadcasts in any locality, and
  - (b) the contract is effective immediately before that date,
- then, unless the contract is one to which paragraph 2 in Part V of this Schedule applies (and subject to paragraph 1 in that Part)—
- (i) the contract shall continue to have effect on and after that date (subject to and in accordance with this Part of this Schedule) as a contract between the Authority and that contractor and any other party to it, and
  - (ii) any reference in the contract to the IBA shall accordingly be construed, in relation to any time falling on or after that date, as a reference to the Authority.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (2) Section 2(3) of the 1981 Act shall have effect in relation to the programmes broadcast by the Authority in accordance with paragraph 1(1) above as if—
- (a) any reference in that subsection to the IBA were a reference to the Authority; and
  - (b) the reference in that subsection to any such contracts as are there mentioned were a reference to contracts which continue in force by virtue of sub-paragraph (1) above.
- (3) As from the transfer date the following provisions of the 1981 Act, namely—
- (a) sections 19(1) to (2B) and 20(2) to (9),
  - (b) sections 21 to 25,
  - (c) sections 32 to 35, and
  - (d) Schedule 4,
- shall have effect in relation to any contract which continues in force by virtue of sub-paragraph (1), or (as the case may be) in relation to the programme contractor under any such contract, subject to the modifications specified in sub-paragraph (4).
- (4) The modifications of the provisions specified in sub-paragraph (3) are as follows—
- (a) any reference in those provisions to the IBA shall (subject to paragraphs (b) and (c) below) be construed as a reference to the Authority;
  - (b) sections 21 and 23 shall have effect as if any reference to the IBA’s obligation to transmit the programmes supplied by a programme contractor were a reference to the right and the duty of the programme contractor under his contract to provide programmes for broadcasting in one of the services provided by the Authority as mentioned in paragraph 1(1) above;
  - (c) section 22 shall have effect as if any reference to the programmes supplied to the IBA were a reference to the programmes supplied for broadcasting in one of those services; and
  - (d) section 32(2)(a) shall have effect as if—
    - (i) for “the branch” there were substituted “ the part ”, and
    - (ii) for “section 36(2) in relation to that branch” there were substituted “ paragraph 12(1) of Schedule 8 to the Broadcasting Act 1990 in relation to that part ”.
- (5) The Authority shall do all that they can to secure that, so long as any contract continues in force by virtue of sub-paragraph (1), neither the programme contractor under the contract nor any associate of his—
- (a) holds any local licence, or
  - (b) controls any body which holds any such licence, or
  - (c) is a participant with more than a 20 per cent. interest in a body corporate which holds any such licence,
- in a case where the area or locality for which the licensed service is to be provided is to a significant extent the same as the locality for which local sound broadcasts are to be provided under the programme contractor’s contract; and this sub-paragraph shall be construed in accordance with Part I of Schedule 2 to this Act.
- (6) The Authority may make such variations of a contract which continues in force by virtue of sub-paragraph (1) as appear to them to be appropriate in consequence of any of the provisions of this Part of this Schedule.

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

*Delivery of programmes by means of local delivery services*

- 3 Part II of this Act shall have effect as if section 72(2) of this Act included a reference to any local sound broadcasting service provided by the Authority in accordance with this Part of this Schedule.

*Provisions relating to Broadcasting Complaints Commission*

- 4 (1) Part V of this Act shall have effect as if—
- (a) section 143(2) of this Act included a reference to any sound programme broadcast by the Authority in accordance with this Part of this Schedule; and
  - (b) (subject to sub-paragraph (2)) the Authority were, in relation to the provision by them of local sound broadcasting services in accordance with this Part of this Schedule, a broadcasting body within the meaning of that Part of this Act.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1)(b) shall not have effect for the purposes of section 145(5) of this Act; and the Authority shall make such variations of any contract which continues in force by virtue of paragraph 2(1) above as appear to them to be appropriate—
- (a) for requiring the programme contractor under that contract—
    - (i) in the case of every programme provided by him which is broadcast by the Authority in accordance with this Part of this Schedule, to retain a recording of that programme for the period of 42 days beginning with the broadcast,
    - (ii) if requested to do so by the Authority for the purpose of enabling them to comply with any requirement imposed on them in pursuance of section 145(4), 155(3) or 167(1) of this Act, to produce any such recording to them, and
    - (iii) if requested to do so by the Authority for the purpose of enabling them to comply with any requirement imposed on them in pursuance of section 145(4) or 155(3) of this Act, to produce to them any transcript of any such programme which he is able to produce to them; and
  - (b) for ensuring compliance by the programme contractor with any request to which section 145(7) of this Act applies which may be made to him by the BCC.
- (3) For the financial year which includes the commencement of section 149 of this Act, and each subsequent financial year falling wholly or partly within the period during which the Authority provide local sound broadcasting services in accordance with this Part of this Schedule, the Secretary of State shall notify to the Authority the sum which he considers to be the appropriate contribution by that body, in respect of the programme contractors under contracts which continue in force by virtue of paragraph 2(1) above, towards the expenses of the BCC; and the Authority shall pay to the Secretary of State any sum notified to them under this sub-paragraph.
- (4) Paragraph 2(1)(g)(i) of Schedule 13 to this Act shall have effect during the period referred to in sub-paragraph (3) above as if the reference to the BBC or the Welsh Authority included a reference to the Authority.
- (5) In this paragraph “the BCC” means the Broadcasting Complaints Commission.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

*Provisions relating to Broadcasting Standards Council*

- 5 Part VI of this Act shall have effect as if—
- (a) section 152(2) of this Act included a reference to any sound programme broadcast by the Authority in accordance with this Part of this Schedule; and
  - (b) the Authority were, in relation to the provision by them of local sound broadcasting services in accordance with this Part of this Schedule, a broadcasting body within the meaning of that Part of this Act.

*Supplementary provisions*

- 6 (1) Any code, notice, direction, approval or other thing drawn up, given or done by or in relation to the IBA—
- (a) in pursuance of a provision of the 1981 Act which has effect as from the transfer date in accordance with this Part of this Schedule, and
  - (b) in connection with any of the IBA’s local sound broadcasting services which are to be provided by the Authority as from that date in accordance with paragraph 1(1) above,
- shall, if in force or effective immediately before that date, have effect as from that date for the relevant purposes as if drawn up, given or done by or in relation to the Authority.
- (2) Anything which immediately before that date was in the process of being done by or in relation to the IBA may, if it was being so done as mentioned in paragraphs (a) and (b) of sub-paragraph (1), be continued on or after that date by or in relation to the Authority.
  - (3) As from that date sections 61 and 62 of the 1981 Act shall have effect for the relevant purposes as if any reference to the IBA were a reference to the Authority.
  - (4) In this paragraph “the relevant purposes” means the purposes of the 1981 Act as it has effect as from the transfer date in accordance with this Part of this Schedule.

**PART V**

REPLACEMENT OF PROGRAMME CONTRACTS BY LOCAL LICENCES

*Replacement of contracts to which paragraph 2(1) in Part IV applies by local licences*

- 1 (1) The Authority may, if the programme contractor under a relevant contract so requests—
- (a) determine the contract as from any time falling on or after the transfer date; and
  - (b) subject to paragraph 3(2) below, grant to the programme contractor as from that time a licence to provide a local service for the locality in which local sound broadcasts were to be provided by him under the contract.
- (2) In sub-paragraph (1) “relevant contract” means a contract which (apart from that sub-paragraph) would continue in force by virtue of paragraph 2(1) in Part IV of this Schedule.



*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (3) A licence granted in pursuance of sub-paragraph (1) shall (subject to the provisions of Part III of this Act) continue in force for such period as the Authority may determine, except that the licence shall not expire—
- (a) before the date on which the contract referred to in that sub-paragraph would have expired if it had not been determined under that sub-paragraph, or
  - (b) later than 31st December 1996 or the date which falls three years after the date referred to in paragraph (a), whichever is the earlier.

*Replacement by local licences of certain contracts for the provision of local sound broadcasts in localities in which such broadcasts were already provided*

- 2 (1) Any contract which—
- (a) the IBA has, at any time on or after 1st September 1989, entered into with a programme contractor for the provision by the contractor of local sound broadcasts in a locality comprised in the locality in which such broadcasts were for the time being to be provided by another programme contractor under a contract entered into before that time, and
  - (b) is effective immediately before the transfer date,
- shall cease to have effect on that date; but, if the first-mentioned programme contractor so requests at any time before that date, the Authority may, subject to paragraph 3(2) below, grant to him as from that date a licence to provide a local service for that locality.
- (2) A licence granted in pursuance of sub-paragraph (1) shall (subject to the provisions of Part III of this Act) continue in force until 31st December 1994.

*Common provisions applying to licences granted in pursuance of paragraph 1(1) or 2(1) above*

- 3 (1) A request for the grant of a licence which is made to the Authority by any person in pursuance of paragraph 1(1) or 2(1) above must be in writing and accompanied by—
- (a) his proposals for providing a service that would cater for the tastes and interests of persons living in the locality for which it would be provided or for any particular tastes and interests of such persons; and
  - (b) such information as the Authority may reasonably require as to his present financial position and his projected financial position during the period for which the licence would be in force.
- (2) The Authority shall not grant a licence to any person in pursuance of paragraph 1(1) or 2(1) above unless they are satisfied that the service proposed to be provided by that person would cater for the tastes and interests of persons living in the locality for which it would be provided or for any particular tastes and interests of such persons.
- (3) Section 104 of this Act shall not apply in relation to the grant of any such licence.
- (4) Section 106(1) of this Act shall apply to any such licence as if for “when making his application” there were substituted “ in pursuance of paragraph 3(1) in Part V of Schedule 11 ”.
- (5) In section 86(4) of this Act the reference to Part III of this Act shall include a reference to this Part of this Schedule.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (6) Except as provided in the preceding provisions of this paragraph, Part III of this Act applies to a licence granted in pursuance of paragraph 1(1) or 2(1) above as it applies to any other local licence granted under that Part.

*Saving for liabilities under terminated contracts*

- 4 (1) Where the contract of a programme contractor is terminated by the Authority under this Part of this Schedule, the termination of that contract shall not affect any liability of his which has accrued under or by virtue of the contract before its termination.
- (2) Where any such contract is so terminated but the programme contractor is granted a local licence as from the date of its termination, any agreement—
  - (a) made before that date between the contractor and any other person, and
  - (b) framed (whether expressly or by implication) by reference to the contract or to the contractor’s status as a programme contractor,shall (unless it expressly provides otherwise) have effect as from that date with such modifications as are necessary to take account of the replacement of the contract by the licence or of the contractor’s new status as the holder of the licence (as the case may require).
- (3) References in sub-paragraph (2) to an agreement include references—
  - (a) to an oral agreement, and
  - (b) to a deed, bond or other instrument.

F466 SCHEDULE 12

Section 134.

**Textual Amendments**

F466 Sch. 12 repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 19(1) Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

F467 SCHEDULE 13

**Textual Amendments**

F467 Sch. 13 repealed (1.4.1997) by 1996 c. 55, s. 148(2), Sch. 11 Pt. I (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1997/1005, art. 4

F469 SCHEDULE 14

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

**F469** Sch. 14 repealed (1.4.1997) by 1996 c. 55, s. 148(2), **Sch. 11 Pt. I** (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1997/1005, **art. 4**

## SCHEDULE 15

Section 162.

### APPLICATION OF 1959 ACT TO TELEVISION AND SOUND PROGRAMMES

#### *Interpretation*

- 1 In this Schedule—
- “the 1959 Act” means the <sup>M50</sup>Obscene Publications Act 1959;
  - “relevant programme” means a programme included in a programme service;
- and other expressions used in this Schedule which are also used in the 1959 Act have the same meaning as in that Act.

### Marginal Citations

**M50** 1959 c. 66.

#### *Liability of person providing live programme material*

- 2 Where—
- (a) any matter is included by any person in a relevant programme in circumstances falling within section 1(5) of the 1959 Act, and
  - (b) that matter has been provided, for inclusion in that programme, by some other person,
- the 1959 Act shall have effect as if that matter had been included in that programme by that other person (as well as by the person referred to in sub-paragraph (a)).

#### *Obscene articles kept for inclusion in programmes*

- 3 It is hereby declared that where a person has an obscene article in his ownership, possession or control with a view to the matter recorded on it being included in a relevant programme, the article shall be taken for the purposes of the 1959 Act to be an obscene article had or kept by that person for publication for gain.

#### *Requirement for consent of Director of Public Prosecutions*

- 4 (1) Proceedings for an offence under section 2 of the 1959 Act for publishing an obscene article shall not be instituted except by or with the consent of the Director of Public Prosecutions in any case where—
- (a) the relevant publication, or
  - (b) the only other publication which followed from the relevant publication,

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

took place in the course of the inclusion of a programme in a programme service; and in this sub-paragraph “the relevant publication” means the publication in respect of which the defendant would be charged if the proceedings were brought.

- (2) Proceedings for an offence under section 2 of the 1959 Act for having an obscene article for publication for gain shall not be instituted except by or with the consent of the Director of Public Prosecutions in any case where—

- (a) the relevant publication, or
- (b) the only other publication which could reasonably have been expected to follow from the relevant publication,

was to take place in the course of the inclusion of a programme in a programme service; and in this sub-paragraph “the relevant publication” means the publication which, if the proceedings were brought, the defendant would be alleged to have had in contemplation.

- (3) Without prejudice to the duty of a court to make an order for the forfeiture of an article under section 1(4) of the <sup>M51</sup>Obscene Publications Act 1964 (orders on conviction), in a case where by virtue of sub-paragraph (2) above proceedings under section 2 of the 1959 Act for having an article for publication for gain could not be instituted except by or with the consent of the Director of Public Prosecutions, no order for the forfeiture of the article shall be made under section 3 of the 1959 Act (power of search and seizure) unless the warrant under which the article was seized was issued on an information laid by or on behalf of the Director of Public Prosecutions.

#### Marginal Citations

M51 1964 c. 74.

#### Defences

- 5 (1) A person shall not be convicted of an offence under section 2 of the 1959 Act in respect of the inclusion of any matter in a relevant programme if he proves that he did not know and had no reason to suspect that the programme would include matter rendering him liable to be convicted of such an offence.
- (2) Where the publication in issue in any proceedings under that Act consists of the inclusion of any matter in a relevant programme, section 4(1) of that Act (general defence of public good) shall not apply; but—
- (a) a person shall not be convicted of an offence under section 2 of that Act, and
  - (b) an order for forfeiture shall not be made under section 3 of that Act,
- if it is proved that the inclusion of the matter in question in a relevant programme is justified as being for the public good on the ground that it is in the interests of—
- (i) drama, opera, ballet or any other art,
  - (ii) science, literature or learning, or
  - (iii) any other objects of general concern.
- (3) Section 4(2) of that Act (admissibility of opinions of experts) shall apply for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) above as it applies for the purposes of section 4(1) and (1A) of that Act.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Exclusion of proceedings under common law*

- 6 Without prejudice to section 2(4) of the 1959 Act, a person shall not be proceeded against for an offence at common law—
- (a) in respect of a relevant programme or anything said or done in the course of such a programme, where it is of the essence of the common law offence that the programme or (as the case may be) what was said or done was obscene, indecent, offensive, disgusting or injurious to morality; or
  - (b) in respect of an agreement to cause a programme to be included in a programme service or to cause anything to be said or done in the course of a programme which is to be so included, where the common law offence consists of conspiring to corrupt public morals or to do any act contrary to public morals or decency.

SCHEDULE 16

Section 171.

AMENDMENTS OF THE <sup>M52</sup>MARINE, &C., BROADCASTING (OFFENCES) ACT 1967

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C90** Sch. 16 extended (with modifications) (Guernsey) (1.6.1994) by S.I. 1994/1064, art. 3(2), Sch. Pt. II

**Marginal Citations**

**M52** 1967 c. 41.

- 1 (1) Section 2 (prohibition of broadcasting from marine structures) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)(a)), for “external waters or in tidal waters in the United Kingdom” substitute “any waters to which this section applies”.
- (3) After subsection (2) insert the following subsection—
- “(3) This section applies to—
- (a) tidal waters in the United Kingdom;
  - (b) external waters; and
  - (c) waters in a designated area within the meaning of the Continental Shelf Act 1964.”
- 2 After section 2 insert the following section—

**“2A Unlawful broadcasting from within prescribed areas of the high seas.**

- (1) Subject to subsection (4) below, it shall not be lawful to make a broadcast which—
- (a) is made from a ship (other than one registered in the United Kingdom, the Isle of Man or any of the Channel Islands) while the ship is within any area of the high seas prescribed for the purposes of this section by an order made by the Secretary of State; and
  - (b) is capable of being received in, or causes interference with any wireless telegraphy in, the United Kingdom.

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (2) If a broadcast is made from a ship in contravention of subsection (1) above, the owner of the ship, the master of the ship and every person who operates, or participates in the operation of, the apparatus by means of which the broadcast is made shall be guilty of an offence.
- (3) A person who procures the making of a broadcast in contravention of subsection (1) above shall be guilty of an offence.
- (4) The making of a broadcast does not contravene subsection (1) above if it is shown to have been authorised under the law of any country or territory outside the United Kingdom.
- (5) Any order under this section shall be made by statutory instrument subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.”
- 3 In section 3 (prohibition of acts connected with broadcasting from certain ships and aircraft, and from marine structures outside the United Kingdom)—
- (a) in subsection (1), at the beginning insert “ Subject to subsection (1A) below, ” and
- (b) after subsection (1) insert the following subsection—
- “(1A) Subsection (1)(a) above does not apply to any broadcast made in contravention of section 2A(1) of this Act, and subsections (1)(c) and (d) above do not apply to structures or other objects in waters falling within section 2(3)(c) of this Act.”
- 4 After section 3 insert the following section—
- “3A Prohibition of management of stations broadcasting from ships, aircraft etc.**
- (1) Any person who, from any place in the United Kingdom or external waters, participates in the management, financing, operation or day-to-day running of any broadcasting station by which broadcasts are made—
- (a) in contravention of section 1, 2 or 2A(1) of this Act, or
- (b) as mentioned in section 3(1)(a) of this Act,
- shall be guilty of an offence.
- (2) In this section “broadcasting station” means any business or other operation (whether or not in the nature of a commercial venture) which is engaged in the making of broadcasts.”
- 5 (1) Section 4 (prohibition of acts facilitating broadcasting from ships, aircraft etc.) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), after paragraph (a) insert—
- “(aa) where paragraph (a) above does not apply but the broadcasts in question are made, or are to be made, from any structure or other object (not being a ship or aircraft) in waters falling within section 2(3)(c) of this Act, he does the act on that structure or other object within those waters; or
- (ab) where paragraph (a) above does not apply but the broadcasts in question are made, or are to be made, from a ship in contravention of section 2A(1) of this Act, he does the act in that ship within any

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

such area of the high seas as is mentioned in paragraph (a) of that provision; or”.

- (3) In subsection (3)(e), for “or 2(1)” substitute “, 2(1) or 2A(1) ”.
- 6 (1) Section 5 (prohibition of acts relating to matter broadcast from ships, aircraft etc.) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1), after paragraph (a) insert—
- “(aa) where paragraph (a) above does not apply but the broadcasts in question are made, or are to be made, from any structure or other object (not being a ship or aircraft) in waters falling within section 2(3)(c) of this Act, he does the act on that structure or other object within those waters; or
- (ab) where paragraph (a) above does not apply but the broadcasts in question are made, or are to be made, from a ship in contravention of section 2A(1) of this Act, he does the act in that ship within any such area of the high seas as is mentioned in paragraph (a) of that provision; or”.
- (3) In subsections (3)(a) and (4), for “or 2(1)”, in each place where those words occur, substitute “, 2(1) or 2A(1) ”.
- 7 (1) Section 6 (penalties and legal proceedings) shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In subsection (1)(a), for “three” substitute “ six ”.
- (3) In subsection (5), for “on behalf of”, in both places where those words occur, substitute “ with the consent of the Secretary of State or ”.
- 8 After section 7 insert the following section—

**“7A Powers of enforcement in relation to marine offences under this Act.**

- (1) The following persons are enforcement officers for the purposes of this section—
- (a) persons authorised by the Secretary of State to exercise the powers conferred by subsection (5) below;
- (b) police officers;
- (c) commissioned officers of Her Majesty’s armed forces;
- (d) officers commissioned by the Commissioners of Customs and Excise under section 6(3) of the Customs and Excise Management Act 1979; and
- (e) persons not falling within any of the preceding paragraphs who are British sea-fishery officers by virtue of section 7(1) of the Sea Fisheries Act 1968;

and in this subsection “armed forces” means the Royal Navy, the Royal Marines, the regular army and the regular air force, and any reserve or auxiliary force of any of those services which has been called out on permanent service, or called into actual service, or embodied.

- (2) If an enforcement officer has reasonable grounds for suspecting—
- (a) that an offence under this Act has been or is being committed by the making of a broadcast from any ship, structure or other object in external waters or in tidal waters in the United Kingdom or from a

---

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

ship registered in the United Kingdom, the Isle of Man or any of the Channel Islands while on the high seas,

- (b) that an offence under section 2 of this Act has been or is being committed by the making of a broadcast from a structure or other object in waters falling within subsection (3)(c) of that section, or
- (c) that an offence under section 2A of this Act has been or is being committed by the making of a broadcast from a ship,

and the Secretary of State has issued a written authorisation for the exercise of the powers conferred by subsection (5) below in relation to that ship, structure or other object, then (subject to subsections (6) and (7) below) the officer may, with or without persons assigned to assist him in his duties, so exercise those powers.

(3) If—

- (a) the Secretary of State has issued an authorisation under subsection (2) above for the exercise of the powers conferred by subsection (5) below in relation to any ship, structure or other object, and
- (b) an enforcement officer has reasonable grounds for suspecting that an offence under section 4 or 5 of this Act has been or is being committed in connection with the making of a broadcast from that ship, structure or other object,

then (subject to subsections (6) and (7) below) the officer may, with or without persons assigned to assist him in his duties, also exercise those powers in relation to any ship, structure or other object which he has reasonable grounds to suspect has been or is being used in connection with the commission of that offence.

(4) Where—

- (a) an enforcement officer has reasonable grounds for suspecting that an offence under section 4 or 5 of this Act has been or is being committed in connection with the making of a broadcast from a ship, structure or other object, but
- (b) an authorisation has not been issued under subsection (2) above for the exercise of the powers conferred by subsection (5) below in relation to that ship, structure or other object,

then (subject to subsections (6) and (7) below) the officer may, with or without persons assigned to assist him in his duties, nevertheless exercise those powers in relation to any ship, structure or other object which he has reasonable grounds to suspect has been or is being used in connection with the commission of that offence if the Secretary of State has issued a written authorisation for the exercise of those powers in relation to that ship, structure or other object.

(5) The powers conferred by this subsection on an enforcement officer in relation to any ship, structure or other object are—

- (a) to board and search the ship, structure or other object;
- (b) to seize and detain the ship, structure or other object and any apparatus or other thing found in the course of the search which appears to him to have been used, or to have been intended to be used, in connection with, or to be evidence of, the commission of the suspected offence;



---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (c) to arrest and search any person who he has reasonable grounds to suspect has committed or is committing an offence under this Act if—
    - (i) that person is on board the ship, structure or other object, or
    - (ii) the officer has reasonable grounds for suspecting that that person was so on board at, or shortly before, the time when the officer boarded the ship, structure or other object;
  - (d) to arrest any person who assaults him, or a person assigned to assist him in his duties, while exercising any of the powers conferred by this subsection or who intentionally obstructs him or any such person in the exercise of any of those powers;
  - (e) to require any person on board the ship, structure or other object to produce any documents or other items which are in his custody or possession and are or may be evidence of the commission of any offence under this Act;
  - (f) to require any such person to do anything for the purpose of facilitating the exercise of any of the powers conferred by this subsection, including enabling any apparatus or other thing to be rendered safe and, in the case of a ship, enabling the ship to be taken to a port;
  - (g) to use reasonable force, if necessary, in exercising any of those powers;
- and references in paragraphs (a) to (c) and (e) above to the ship, structure or other object include references to any ship's boat or other vessel used from the ship, structure or other object.
- (6) Except as provided in subsection (7) below, the powers conferred by subsection (5) above shall only be exercised in tidal waters in the United Kingdom or in external waters.
  - (7) Those powers may in addition—
    - (a) in relation to a suspected offence under this Act committed in a ship registered in the United Kingdom, the Isle of Man or any of the Channel Islands while on the high seas, be exercised in relation to that ship on the high seas;
    - (b) in relation to a suspected offence under section 2 of this Act committed on a structure or other object within waters falling within subsection (3)(c) of that section, be exercised in relation to that structure or other object within those waters; and
    - (c) in relation to a suspected offence under section 2A of this Act committed in a ship within any such area of the high seas as is mentioned in subsection (1)(a) of that section, be exercised in relation to that ship within that area of the high seas.
  - (8) Any person who—
    - (a) assaults an enforcement officer, or a person assigned to assist him in his duties, while exercising any of the powers conferred by subsection (5) above or intentionally obstructs him or any such person in the exercise of any of those powers, or
    - (b) without reasonable excuse fails or refuses to comply with any such requirement as is mentioned in paragraph (e) or (f) of that subsection,

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

shall be guilty of an offence under this Act.

- (9) Neither an enforcement officer nor a person assigned to assist him in his duties shall be liable in any civil or criminal proceedings for anything done in purported exercise of any of the powers conferred by subsection (5) above if the court is satisfied that the act was done in good faith and that there were reasonable grounds for doing it.
- (10) Nothing in this section shall have effect so as to prejudice the exercise of any powers exercisable apart from this section.
- (11) Any reference in this section, in relation to a person assigned to assist an enforcement officer in his duties, to the exercise of any of the powers conferred by subsection (5) above is a reference to the exercise by that person of any of those powers on behalf of that officer.”

## SCHEDULE 17

Section 176.

### INFORMATION ABOUT PROGRAMMES: COPYRIGHT

#### PART I

##### COPYRIGHT LICENSING

- 1 (1) This paragraph applies where the person providing a programme service has assigned to another the copyright in works containing information to which this Schedule applies.
- (2) The person providing the programme service, not the assignee, is to be treated as the owner of the copyright for the purposes of licensing any act restricted by the copyright done on or after the day on which this paragraph comes into force.
- (3) Where the assignment by the person providing the programme service occurred before 29th September 1989 then, in relation to any act restricted by the copyright so assigned—
- (a) sub-paragraph (2) does not have effect, and
  - (b) references below in this Schedule to the person providing the programme service are to the assignee.

#### PART II

##### USE OF INFORMATION AS OF RIGHT

###### *Circumstances in which right available*

- 2 (1) Paragraph 4 applies to any act restricted by the copyright in works containing information to which this Schedule applies done by the publisher if—
- (a) a licence to do the act could be granted by the person providing the programme service but no such licence is held by the publisher,

---

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) the person providing the programme service refuses to grant to the publisher a licence to do the act, being a licence of such duration, and of which the terms as to payment for doing the act are such, as would be acceptable to the publisher, and
  - (c) the publisher has complied with paragraph 3.
- (2) The reference in sub-paragraph (1) to refusing to grant a licence includes failing to do so within a reasonable time of being asked.
- (3) References below in this Schedule to the terms of payment are to the terms as to payment for doing any act restricted by the copyright in works containing information to which this Schedule applies.

#### *Notice of intention to exercise right*

- 3 (1) A publisher intending to avail himself of the right conferred by paragraph 4 must—
- (a) give notice of his intention to the person providing the programme service, asking that person to propose terms of payment, and
  - (b) after receiving the proposal or the expiry of a reasonable time, give reasonable notice to the person providing the programme service of the date on which he proposes to begin exercising the right and the terms of payment in accordance with which he intends to do so.
- (2) Before exercising the right the publisher must—
- (a) give reasonable notice to the Copyright Tribunal of his intention to exercise the right and of the date on which he proposes to begin to do so, and
  - (b) apply to the Tribunal under paragraph 5 to settle the terms of payment.

#### *Conditions for exercise of right*

- 4 (1) Where the publisher, on or after the date specified in a notice under paragraph 3(1)(b), does any act in circumstances in which this paragraph applies, he shall, if he makes the payments required by this paragraph, be in the same position as regards infringement of copyright as if he had at all material times been the holder of a licence to do so granted by the person providing the programme service.
- (2) Payments are to be made at not less than quarterly intervals in arrears.
- (3) The amount of any payment is that determined in accordance with any order of the Copyright Tribunal under paragraph 5 or, if no such order has been made—
- (a) in accordance with any proposal for terms of payment made by the person providing the programme service pursuant to a request under paragraph 3(1)(a), or
  - (b) where no proposal has been so made or the amount determined in accordance with the proposal so made appears to the publisher to be unreasonably high, in accordance with the terms of payment notified under paragraph 3(1)(b).

#### *Applications to settle payments*

- 5 (1) On an application to settle the terms of payment, the Copyright Tribunal shall consider the matter and make such order as it may determine to be reasonable in the circumstances.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (2) An order under sub-paragraph (1) has effect from the date the applicant begins to exercise the right conferred by paragraph 4 and any necessary repayments, or further payments, shall be made in respect of amounts that have fallen due.

*Application for review of order*

- 6 (1) A person exercising the right conferred by paragraph 4, or the person providing the programme service, may apply to the Tribunal to review any order under paragraph 5.
- (2) An application under sub-paragraph (1) shall not be made, except with the special leave of the Tribunal—
- (a) within twelve months from the date of the order, or of the decision on a previous application under this paragraph, or
  - (b) if the order was made so as to be in force for fifteen months or less, or as a result of a decision on a previous application is due to expire within fifteen months of that decision, until the last three months before the expiry date.
- (3) On the application the Tribunal shall consider the matter and make such order confirming or varying the original order as it may determine to be reasonable in the circumstances.
- (4) An order under this paragraph has effect from the date on which it is made or such later date as may be specified by the Tribunal.

**PART III**

SUPPLEMENTARY

- 7 (1) This Schedule and the <sup>M53</sup>Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 shall have effect as if the Schedule were included in Chapter III of Part I of that Act, and that Act shall have effect as if proceedings under this Schedule were listed in section 149 of that Act (jurisdiction of the Copyright Tribunal).
- (2) References in this Schedule to anything done by the publisher include anything done on his behalf.
- (3) References in this Schedule to works include future works, and references to the copyright in works include future copyright.

**Marginal Citations**

M53 1988 c. 48.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## SCHEDULE 18

Section 180.

### TRANSFER OF FUNCTIONS CONNECTED WITH TELEVISION LICENCES

#### PART I

##### <sup>M54</sup>AMENDMENTS OF WIRELESS TELEGRAPHY ACT 1949

###### Marginal Citations

**M54** 1949 c. 54.

- 1 (1) Section 1 (licensing of wireless telegraphy) shall be amended as follows.
  - (2) In subsection (1), for the words from “granted” to “any person” substitute “granted under this section—
    - (a) by the Secretary of State (unless it is a television licence), or
    - (b) if it is a television licence, by the BBC;and any person ”.
  - (3) In subsection (2), for the words from “limitations as” (where first occurring) to “including” substitute “limitations—
    - (a) as the Secretary of State may think fit; or
    - (b) in the case of a television licence, as the Secretary of State may direct or (subject to any such direction) the BBC may think fit,including ”.
  - (4) In subsection (3), before “, continue in force” insert “ or (if it is a television licence) by the BBC ”.
  - (5) In subsection (4)—
    - (a) after “wireless telegraphy licence” insert “ other than a television licence ”;
    - and
    - (b) at the end add “; and a television licence may be revoked, or the terms, provisions or limitations thereof varied, by the BBC (either of their own motion or to give effect to any direction of the Secretary of State under subsection (2)(b) of this section)—
      - (a) by a notice in writing served on the holder of the licence; or
      - (b) by a general notice published as mentioned above.”
  - (6) At the end of the section add the following subsection—

“(7) In this Act—  
“television licence” means a wireless telegraphy licence authorising the installation and use of a television receiver; and  
“television receiver” means television receiving apparatus of any class or description specified in regulations made by the Secretary of State under section 2 of this Act.”

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
 Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

2 (1) Section 2 (fees and charges for wireless telegraphy licences) shall be amended as follows.

<sup>F470</sup>(2) .....

(3) For the first paragraph of subsection (2) substitute—

“Notwithstanding anything in subsection (1) of this section, where—

- (a) an application for the issue or renewal of a television licence is made to the BBC by a person ordinarily resident in the United Kingdom, and
- (b) the BBC are satisfied, by means of a certificate issued by the local authority and produced to them by the applicant, that the applicant is a blind person not resident in a public or charitable institution or in a school,

the BBC shall, to such extent as the Secretary of State may determine, dispense with the payment of any sum which would otherwise be payable on the issue or renewal of the licence.”

**Textual Amendments**  
**F470** Sch. 18 Pt. I para. 2(2) repealed (18.6.1998) by 1998 c. 6, ss. 7, 10(2), Sch. 2

3 In section 15(1) (entry and search of premises etc.), for the words from “authorising” down to (but not including) “and named” substitute “authorising—

- (a) any person or persons authorised in that behalf by the Secretary of State; or
- (b) where the offence relates to the installation or use of a television receiver, any person or persons authorised in that behalf by the BBC or the Secretary of State,”.

4 In section 19 (interpretation), insert the following subsection after subsection (2)—

“(2A) In this Act—

“the BBC” means the British Broadcasting Corporation; and

“television licence” and “television receiver” have the meaning given by section 1(7) of this Act.”

## PART II

### <sup>M55</sup>AMENDMENTS OF PART I OF WIRELESS TELEGRAPHY ACT 1967

**Marginal Citations**  
**M55** 1967 c. 72.

1 In the following provisions, namely—

- <sup>F471</sup>(a) .....
- (b) subsections (1), (3) and (6) of section 2 (notification and recording of transactions),
- (c) subsection (1) of section 3 (power to call for additional information),

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (d) subsections (1) and (2) of section 4 (service of notices, etc.), and
  - (e) subsections (3) to (5) of section 5 (offences and enforcement),
- for “the Postmaster General” wherever those words occur (which are, by virtue of section 3(1) of the <sup>M56</sup>Post Office Act 1969 and the <sup>M57</sup>Ministry of Posts and Telecommunications (Dissolution) Order 1974, to be construed as, or in certain instances as including, a reference to the Secretary of State) substitute “ the BBC ”.

**Textual Amendments**

**F471** Sch. 18 Pt. II para. 1(a) repealed (16.8.1996) by [S.I. 1996/1864, art. 4\(6\)](#)

**Marginal Citations**

**M56** 1969 c. 48.

**M57** [S.I. 1974/691](#).

F472<sub>2</sub> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F472** Sch. 18 Pt. II para. 2 repealed (16.8.1996) by [S.I. 1996/1864, art. 4\(6\)](#)

- 3 In section 2(3)—
  - (a) for “him” substitute “ them ”; and
  - (b) for “he” substitute “ they ”.
- 4 In section 3(1), for “him” (where first occurring) substitute “ them ”.
- 5 In section 4(2), for “him” (wherever occurring) substitute “ them ”.
- 6 In section 5—
  - (a) in subsection (3), for “his” substitute “ their ”; and
  - (b) in subsection (5), after “came to” insert “ their or ”.
- 7 In section 6(1)—
  - (a) insert the following definition after the definition of “appointed day”—  
““the BBC” means the British Broadcasting Corporation;”;
  - (b) at the end of the definition of “prescribed” add “ after consultation with the BBC ”.

SCHEDULE 19

Section 183.

THE GAELIC TELEVISION [<sup>F473</sup>SERVICE] : SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

**Textual Amendments**

**F473** Word in Sch. 19 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 73\(3\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C91** Sch. 19: transfer of functions (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 1 para. 7** (with **Sch. 18**); **S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1** (with **art. 11**)

#### *Status and capacity*

- 1 (1) The [<sup>F473</sup>Service] shall be a body corporate.
- (2) The [<sup>F473</sup>Service] shall not be treated for the purposes of the enactments and rules of law relating to the privileges of the Crown as a body exercising functions on behalf of the Crown.
- (3) It shall be within the capacity of the [<sup>F473</sup>Service] as a statutory corporation to do such things and enter into such transactions as are incidental or conducive to the discharge of their functions under section 183 of this Act.

#### *Tenure of office and remuneration*

- 2 (1) Subject to [<sup>F474</sup>sub-paragraphs (1A) and (2)], each member of the [<sup>F473</sup>Service] shall hold and vacate office in accordance with the terms of his appointment.
- [<sup>F475</sup>(1A) A person is not to be appointed as a member of the Service for a term of more than four years (but a person so appointed shall be eligible for re-appointment at the end of his term of office).]
- (2) Any member of the [<sup>F473</sup>Service] may at any time resign his office by notice to [<sup>F476</sup>OFCOM].
- (3) [<sup>F476</sup>OFCOM] may pay to each member such remuneration and allowances as they may determine.

#### Textual Amendments

- F474** Words in Sch. 19 para. 2(1) substituted (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), ss. 210(2)(a), 411(2)** (with **Sch. 18**); **S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1** (with **art. 11**)
- F475** Sch. 19 para. 2(1A) inserted (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), ss. 210(2)(b), 411(2)** (with **Sch. 18**); **S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1** (with **art. 11**)
- F476** Words in Sch. 19 substituted (29.12.2003) by **Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 15 para. 73(2)** (with **Sch. 18**); **S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1** (with **art. 11**)

#### *Disqualification of members of [<sup>F473</sup>Service] for House of Commons*

<sup>F477</sup>3 .....

#### Textual Amendments

- F477** Sch. 19 para. 3 repealed (1.4.1997) by **1996 c. 55, s. 148(2), Sch. 11 Pt. I** (with **s. 43(1)(6)**); **S.I. 1997/1005, art. 4**



*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### *Proceedings*

- 4 (1) Subject to paragraph 5, the quorum of the [F<sup>473</sup>Service] and the arrangements relating to their meetings shall be such as the [F<sup>473</sup>Service] may determine.
- (2) The arrangements may, with the approval of [F<sup>476</sup>OFCOM] , provide for the discharge, under the general direction of the [F<sup>473</sup>Service] , of any of the [F<sup>473</sup>Service] 's functions by a committee or by one or more of the members or employees of the [F<sup>473</sup>Service] .

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F476** Words in Sch. 19 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 73\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

- 5 (1) A member who is in any way directly or indirectly interested in any matter that is brought up for consideration at a meeting of the [F<sup>473</sup>Service] shall disclose the nature of his interest to the meeting; and, where such a disclosure is made—
- (a) the disclosure shall be recorded in the minutes of the meeting, and
- (b) (subject to sub-paragraph (2)) the member shall not take any part in any deliberation or decision of the [F<sup>473</sup>Service] , or of any of their committees, with respect to that matter.
- (2) Sub-paragraph (1)(b) shall not apply in relation to any meeting of the [F<sup>473</sup>Service] at which all of the other members present resolve that the member's interest should be disregarded for the purposes of that provision.
- (3) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1), a general notification given at a meeting of the [F<sup>473</sup>Service] by a member to the effect that he is a member of a specified company or firm and is to be regarded as interested in any matter involving that company or firm shall be regarded as a sufficient disclosure of his interest in relation to any such matter.
- (4) A member need not attend in person at a meeting of the [F<sup>473</sup>Service] in order to make a disclosure which he is required to make under this paragraph if he takes reasonable steps to secure that the disclosure is made by a notice which is taken into consideration and read at the meeting.
- (5) In this paragraph references to a meeting of the [F<sup>473</sup>Service] include references to a meeting of any of their committees.
- 6 The validity of any proceedings of the [F<sup>473</sup>Service] shall not be affected by any vacancy among the members or by any defect in the appointment of a member or by any failure to comply with the requirements of paragraph 5.

### *Employees of the [F<sup>473</sup>Service]*

- 7 (1) The [F<sup>473</sup>Service] may appoint such employees as they may determine with the consent of [F<sup>476</sup>OFCOM] as to numbers and terms of employment.
- (2) If the [F<sup>473</sup>Service] determine to do so in the case of any of their employees, the [F<sup>473</sup>Service] shall pay to or in respect of those employees such pensions, allowances

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

or gratuities, or provide and maintain for them such pension schemes (whether contributory or not), as the [<sup>F473</sup>Service] may determine.

(3) The <sup>M58</sup>Employers' Liability (Compulsory Insurance) Act 1969 shall not require insurance to be effected by the [<sup>F473</sup>Service].

[<sup>F478</sup>(4) A person who is an employee of the Service is not to be eligible to be appointed as a member of the Service.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F476** Words in Sch. 19 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 73\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F478** Sch. 19 para. 7(4) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), ss. 210\(3\), 411\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

#### Marginal Citations

**M58** 1969 c. 57.

#### *Financial provision*

- 8 There shall be defrayed out of the [<sup>F479</sup>Gaelic Broadcasting Fund]—
- (a) any expenses incurred by [<sup>F476</sup>OFCOM] —
    - (i) by virtue of paragraph 2,
    - (ii) in paying the salaries of any employees of [<sup>F476</sup>OFCOM] whose services have been furnished to the [<sup>F473</sup>Service] by [<sup>F476</sup>OFCOM], or
    - (iii) in connection with providing the [<sup>F473</sup>Service] with office accommodation or other facilities;
  - (b) any expenses incurred by the [<sup>F473</sup>Service] by virtue of paragraph 7; and
  - (c) with the approval of [<sup>F476</sup>OFCOM]<sup>F480</sup> ..., any other expenses incurred by the [<sup>F473</sup>Service].

#### Textual Amendments

**F476** Words in Sch. 19 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 73\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F479** Words in Sch. 19 para. 8 substituted (1.4.1997) by [1996 c. 55, s. 148\(1\), Sch. 10 Pt. II para. 26\(a\)\(i\)](#); [S.I. 1997/1005, art. 4](#)

**F480** Words in Sch. 19 para. 8(c) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\), s. 411\(2\), Sch. 15 para. 73\(4\), Sch. 19\(1\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3\(1\), Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

[<sup>F481</sup>8A(1) The Service must pay all their receipts to OFCOM.

- (2) OFCOM must hold amounts received by them under this paragraph to the credit of the Gaelic Broadcasting Fund (and, accordingly, those amounts are not to be regarded as forming part of OFCOM's revenues.)]

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

**F481** Sch. 19 para. 8A inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), **ss. 210(4)**, 411(2) (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, **art. 3(1)**, [Sch. 1](#) (with **art. 11**)

### *Authentication of [F473Service] 's seal*

- 9 The application of the seal of the [F473Service] shall be authenticated by the signature of the chairman or of some other person authorised for the purpose.

### *Presumption of authenticity of documents issued by the [F473Service]*

- 10 Any document purporting to be an instrument issued by the [F473Service] and to be duly executed under the seal of the [F473Service] or to be signed on behalf of the [F473Service] shall be received in evidence and shall be deemed to be such an instrument unless the contrary is shown.

### *Accounts and audit*

- 11 (1) The [F473Service] shall keep proper accounts and proper records in relation to the accounts, and shall prepare in respect of each financial year a statement of accounts in such form as [F476OFCOM] may direct.
- (2) The accounts of the [F473Service] shall be audited by auditors to be appointed by the [F473Service] with the approval of [F476OFCOM] .
- <sup>F482</sup>(3) A person shall not be qualified to be appointed in pursuance of sub-paragraph (2) unless he is eligible for appointment as a company auditor under section 25 of the Companies Act 1989.]
- (4) The [F473Service] shall at all reasonable times upon demand made by [F476OFCOM]<sup>F483</sup> ... or by any persons authorised by [<sup>F484</sup>[F476OFCOM]<sup>F483</sup> ... ] in that behalf—
- (a) afford to them full liberty to examine the accounts of the [F473Service]; and
  - (b) furnish them with all forecasts, estimates, information and documents which they may require with respect to the financial transactions and commitments of the [F473Service].

### Textual Amendments

**F476** Words in Sch. 19 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), **Sch. 15 para. 73(2)** (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, **art. 3(1)**, [Sch. 1](#) (with **art. 11**)

**F482** Sch. 19 para. 11(3) substituted (1.10.1991) by S.I. 1991/1997, **reg. 2**, **Sch. para. 77(7)**

**F483** Words in Sch. 19 para. 11(4) repealed (29.12.2003) [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 73\(5\)](#), **Sch. 19(1)** (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, **art. 3(1)**, [Sch. 1](#) (with **art. 11**)

**F484** Words in Sch. 19 para. 11(4) substituted (1.4.1997) by 1996 c. 55, s. 148(1), **Sch. 10 Pt. II para. 26(b)(ii)**; S.I. 1997/1005, **art. 4**

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Annual reports

- 12 (1) As soon as possible after the end of each financial year, the [F473 Service] shall prepare a general report of their proceedings during that year and transmit it to [F476 OFCOM].
- [F485(1A) The report must include a statement of how the Service are proposing to carry out their functions during the next financial year.]
- (2) The report shall have attached to it the statement of accounts for the year and a copy of any report made by the auditors on that statement.
- (3) [F476 OFCOM] shall send a copy of each annual report received by them in accordance with this paragraph to the Secretary of State who shall lay copies of it before each House of Parliament.
- [F486(4) Where an annual report is sent by [F476 OFCOM] under sub-paragraph (3) to the Scottish Ministers (by virtue of provision made under section 63 of the Scotland Act 1998), the Scottish Ministers shall lay a copy of the report before the Scottish Parliament.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F476** Words in Sch. 19 substituted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 15 para. 73\(2\)](#) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F485** Sch. 19 para. 12(1A) inserted (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), [ss. 210\(5\)](#), 411(2) (with [Sch. 18](#)); [S.I. 2003/3142](#), art. 3(1), [Sch. 1](#) (with art. 11)

**F486** Sch. 19 para. 12(4) added (1.7.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1750](#), arts. 1, 6(1), [Sch. 5 para. 10\(4\)](#); [S.I. 1998/3178](#)

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C92** Sch. 19 para. 12(3): functions exercisable (1.7.1999) concurrently by the Scottish Ministers and Ministers of the Crown by [S.I. 1999/1750](#), arts. 1, 3, [Sch. 2](#); [S.I. 1998/3178](#)

Sch. 19 para. 12(3) certain functions made exercisable by Scottish Ministers (1.7.1999) by [S.I. 1999/1756](#), arts. 1, 2, [Sch. para. 12\(1\)](#); [S.I. 1998/3178](#)

## SCHEDULE 20

Section 203(1).

### MINOR AND CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

#### *Parliamentary Papers Act 1840 (c. 9)*

- 1 Section 3 (protection in respect of proceedings for printing extracts from or abstracts of parliamentary papers) shall have effect as if the reference to printing included a reference to including in a programme service.

#### *Law of Libel Amendment Act 1888 (c. 64)*

- [F4872 Section 3 (contemporary reports of proceedings before courts exercising judicial authority) shall apply in relation to reports or matters included in a programme service, and in relation to any inclusion in such a service of any such report or matter, as it applies in relation to reports and matters published in a newspaper and to publication in a newspaper.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Textual Amendments

**F487** Sch. 20 para. 2 repealed (31.3.2001 for S. otherwise *prosp.*) by 1996 c. 31, ss. 16, 19(3), Sch. 2 (with s. 20(2)); S.S.I. 2001/98, art. 3

#### *Children and Young Persons Act 1933 (c. 12)*

- [<sup>F488</sup>3 (1) In section 28 (powers of entry)—
- (a) in subsection (2)(a), omit “a cable programme studio” and for “broadcast in a cable programme” substitute “ programme service ”; and
  - (b) for subsection (4) substitute—
    - “(4) In this section—
      - “broadcasting studio” means a studio used in connection with the provision of a programme service;
      - “programme service” has the same meaning as in the Broadcasting Act 1990.”
- (2) Sections 39 <sup>F489</sup> . . . (restriction on newspaper reports of court proceedings involving children and young persons) shall, with the necessary modifications, apply in relation to reports or matters included in a programme service, and in relation to including any such reports or matters in such a service, as they apply in relation to reports or matters published in newspapers and to publishing any matter in a newspaper.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F488** Sch. 20 para. 3 repealed (31.3.2001 for S. otherwise *prosp.*) by 1996 c. 31, ss. 16, 19(3), Sch. 2 (with s. 20(2)); S.S.I. 2001/98, art. 3

**F489** Words in Sch. 20 para. 3(2) repealed (3.2.1995) by 1994 c. 33, s. 168(3), Sch. 11; S.I. 1995/127, art. 2(1), Sch. 1 Appendix C

#### *Children and Young Persons (Scotland) Act 1937 (c. 37)*

- 4 (1) In section 36 (power to enter studios)—
- (a) in subsection (2)(a), omit “a cable programme studio” and for “broadcast in a cable programme” substitute “ programme service ”; and
  - (b) for subsection (4) substitute—
    - “(4) In this section—
      - “broadcasting studio” means a studio used in connection with the provision of a programme service;
      - “programme service” has the same meaning as in the Broadcasting Act 1990”.
- (2) Section 46 (restriction on newspaper reports of court proceedings involving children and young persons) shall, with the necessary modifications, apply in relation to reports or matters included in a programme service, and in relation to including any such reports or matters in such a service, as it applies in relation to reports or matters published in newspapers and to publishing any matter in a newspaper.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Public Bodies (Admission to Meetings) Act 1960 (c. 67)*

- 5 In section 1(7) (admission of public to meetings of local authorities and other bodies), for the words from “or for” to “licensed” substitute “ or for programme services (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990) other than sound or television broadcasting services ”.

*Children and Young Persons Act 1963 (c. 37)*

- 6 In section 37(2) (restriction on persons under 16 taking part in certain performances), for paragraph (d) substitute—  
“(d) any performance not falling within paragraph (c) above but included in a programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990);”.

*Licensing Act 1964 (c. 26)*

- 7 In section 182(1) (relaxation, with respect to licensed premises, of law relating to music and dancing licences), for the words from “or by the” to “licensed” substitute “ or of programmes included in any programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990) other than a sound or television broadcasting service ”.

*Private Places of Entertainment (Licensing) Act 1967 (c. 19)*

- 8 In section 2(3) (certain private places of entertainment to require licences), for the words from “or of being” onwards substitute “ or of being included in any programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990) other than a sound or television broadcasting service. ”

*Wireless Telegraphy Act 1967 (c. 72)*

F490<sup>9</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F490** Sch. 20 para. 9 repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 19(1) Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

*London Cab Act 1968 (c. 7)*

F491<sup>10</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F491** Sch. 20 para. 10 repealed (1.6.2003) by Private Hire Vehicles (London) Act 1998 (c. 34), s. 40(2), Sch. 2 (with s. 29); S.I. 2003/580, arts. 1(2), 2(2)(b)

*Trade Descriptions Act 1968 (c. 29)*

- 11 In section 39(2) (interpretation), for “or in a programme included in a cable programme service” substitute “ or in any programme included in any programme

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990) other than a sound or television broadcasting service ”.

*Social Work (Scotland) Act 1968 (c. 49)*

- 12 In section 58(1) (prohibition of publication of proceedings in a children’s hearing), for the words “broadcast or a programme included in cable programme service”—
- (a) in the first place where they occur, substitute “ programme included in a programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990) ”;
  - and
  - (b) in the second place where they occur, substitute “ programme included in such a programme service ”.

*Theatres Act 1968 (c. 54)*

- 13 In section 7(2)(b) (exceptions for performance given in certain circumstances), for sub-paragraph (iii) substitute—
- “(iii) the performance to be included in a programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990) other than a sound or television broadcasting service;”.

*Gaming Act 1968 (c. 65)*

F492 14 .....

**Textual Amendments**

F492 Sch. 20 para. 14 repealed (6.5.1992) by Bingo Act 1992 (c. 10), ss. 1(9), 2(2)

*Children and Young Persons Act (Northern Ireland) 1968 (c. 34 (N.I.))*

- 15 F493(1) .....
- F493(2) .....
- F494(3) .....
- F494(4) .....

**Textual Amendments**

F493 Sch. 20 para. 15(1)(2) repealed (4.11.1996) by S.I. 1995/755 (N.I. 2), art. 185(2), Sch. 10 (with Sch. 8 para. 23(4)); S.R. 1996/297, art. 2(2)

F494 Sch. 20 para. 15(3)(4) repealed (31.1.1999) by S.I. 1998/1504 (N.I. 9), art. 65(2), Sch. 6; S.R. 1999/25, art. 2

*Local Government Act 1972 (c. 70)*

- 16 In section 100K (interpretation and application of Part VA of the Act), in paragraph (b) of the definition of “newspaper”, for sub-paragraph (ii) substitute—



**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“(ii) for inclusion in programmes to be included in any programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990) other than a sound or television broadcasting service;”.

*Local Government Act (Northern Ireland) 1972 (c. 9 (N.I.))*

- 17 In section 148(1) (interpretation), in the definition of “newspaper”, for the words from “or for” onwards substitute “or for programmes to be included in a programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990) other than a sound or television broadcasting service;”.

*Employment Agencies Act 1973 (c. 35)*

- 18 In section 13(4) (interpretation), for paragraphs (c) and (d) substitute “or (c) to providing a programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990).”

*Northern Ireland Constitution Act 1973 (c. 36)*

- F495<sup>19</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F495** Sch. 20 para. 19 repealed (2.12.1999) by 1998 c. 47, s. 100(2), Sch. 15 (with s. 95); S.I. 1999/3209, art. 2, Sch.

*Fair Trading Act 1973 (c. 41)*

- F496<sup>20</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F496** Sch. 20 para. 20 repealed (20.6.2003) by Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40), s. 279, Sch. 26; S.I. 2003/1397, art. 2(1), Sch. (with art. 8)

*Criminal Procedure (Scotland) Act 1975 (c. 21)*

- 21 In subsection (2) of sections 169 and 374 (restrictions on report of proceedings involving person under 16), for the words from “broadcasts” to “service” substitute “programmes included in a programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990)”.

*Industry Act 1975 (c. 68)*

- 22 F497<sup>21</sup> .....



**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**Textual Amendments**

**F497** Sch. 20 para. 22 repealed (06.01.1992) by [British Technology Group Act 1991 \(c. 66, SIF 64\)](#), s. 17(2), [Sch. 2, Pt.I](#); S.I. 1991/2721, [art.2](#).

*Scottish Development Agency Act 1975 (c. 69)*

- 23 In section 17 (the Scottish Development Agency and the media), for “Cable and Broadcasting Act 1984” substitute “ Broadcasting Act 1990 ”.

*Welsh Development Agency Act 1975 (c. 70)*

- 24 In section 19 (the Welsh Development Agency and the media)—
- (a) in subsection (1), for paragraphs (b) and (c) substitute—  
“(b) shall become the holder of a relevant licence.”;
  - (b) in subsection (3), for paragraphs (ii) and (iii) substitute—  
“(ii) activities connected with the provision of a service under a relevant licence.”;
  - (c) in subsection (9)—
    - (i) for “a programme contractor, they shall consult the Independent Broadcasting Authority” substitute “ the holder of a relevant licence, they shall consult the appropriate authority ”; and
    - <sup>F498</sup>(ii) .....
  - (d) omit subsection (9A);
  - (e) in subsection (10), for “programme contractor” substitute “ holder of a relevant licence ”; and
  - (f) for subsection (11) substitute—  
“(11) In this section—  
“appropriate authority” means—
    - (a) in relation to a licence granted under Part I of the Broadcasting Act 1990, the Independent Television Commission; and
    - (b) in relation to a licence granted under Part III of that Act, the Radio Authority;  
“relevant licence” means a licence granted by the Independent Television Commission or the Radio Authority under Part I or (as the case may be) Part III of that Act.”

**Textual Amendments**

**F498** Sch. 20 para. 24(c)(ii) repealed (29.12.2003) by [Communications Act 2003 \(c. 21\)](#), s. 411(2), [Sch. 19\(1\)](#) Note 1 (with [Sch. 18](#)); S.I. 2003/3142, [art. 3\(1\)](#), [Sch. 1](#) (with [art. 11](#))

*Restrictive Trade Practices Act 1976 (c. 34)*

- 25 In section 41(1)(a) (exceptions to restriction on disclosure of information), after “the Electricity Act 1989” insert “ or the Broadcasting Act 1990 ”.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Sexual Offences (Amendment) Act 1976 (c. 82)*

- 26 (1) In section 4 (anonymity of complainants in rape etc. cases)—
- (a) in subsection (1), for “broadcast or included in a cable programme”, in each place where those words occur, substitute “included in a relevant programme for reception” and for “broadcasting or inclusion in a cable programme” substitute “inclusion in a relevant programme”;
  - (b) in subsection (5), for “broadcast or included in a cable programme” substitute “or included in a relevant programme” and for paragraphs (c) and (d) substitute “and
    - (c) in the case of matter included in a relevant programme, any body corporate which is engaged in providing the service in which the programme is included and any person having functions in relation to the programme corresponding to those of an editor of a newspaper.”;
  - (c) in subsection (5A), for “or broadcast of any matter or the inclusion of any matter in a cable programme,” substitute “of any matter or the inclusion of any matter in a relevant programme,” and for “, broadcast or cable programme” substitute “or programme”;
  - (d) in subsection (6), omit the definitions of “a broadcast” and “cable programme” and after the definition of “complainant” insert—
    - ““relevant programme” means a programme included in a programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990);” and
  - (e) in subsection (7), for “broadcast or inclusion in a cable programme” substitute “or upon matter included in a relevant programme”.
- (2) In section 5(5) (supplementary provisions), for “broadcast or cable programme in question was of” substitute “or programme in question was of, or (as the case may be) included,”.
- (3) In section 7(6) (extent to Northern Ireland), for “broadcast or inclusion in a cable programme” substitute “in, or such an inclusion of matter in a relevant programme for reception in,”.

*Sexual Offences (Northern Ireland) Order 1978 (S.I. 1978/460 (N.I.5))*

- 27 (1) In Article 6 (anonymity of complainants in rape offence cases)—
- <sup>F499</sup>(a) .....
  - (b) in paragraph (5), for “broadcast or included in a cable programme” substitute “or included in a relevant programme” and for sub-paragraphs (c) and (d) substitute “and
    - (c) in the case of matter included in a relevant programme, any body corporate which is engaged in providing the service in which the programme is included and any person having functions in relation to the programme corresponding to those of an editor of a newspaper.”;
  - (c) in paragraph (6), omit the definitions of “a broadcast” and “cable programme” and after the definition of “complainant” insert—

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

““relevant programme” means a programme included in a programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990);” and

- (d) in paragraph (7), for “broadcasting or inclusion in a cable programme” substitute “or inclusion in a relevant programme” and for “broadcast or inclusion in a cable programme” substitute “or upon matter included in a relevant programme”.

- (2) In Article 7(3) (supplementary provisions), for “broadcast or cable programme in question was of” substitute “or programme in question was of, or (as the case may be) included,”.

F499(3) .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F499** Sch. 20 para. 27(1)(a)(3) repealed (9.1.1995) by S.I. 1994/2795 (NI 15), art. 26(3), Sch. 3; S.R. 1994/446, art. 2

*Competition Act 1980 (c. 21)*

F500<sup>28</sup> .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F500** Sch. 20 para. 28 repealed (20.6.2003) by Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40), s. 279, Sch. 26; S.I. 2003/1397, art. 2(1), Sch. (with art. 8)

*Magistrates’ Courts Act 1980 (c. 43)*

- 29 (1) In section 8 (restrictions on reports of committal proceedings)—
  - (a) in subsection (1), for “broadcast or include in a cable programme” substitute “include in a relevant programme for reception”;
  - (b) in subsections (2B), (4), (5) and (8), for “broadcast or included in a cable programme”, in each place where those words occur, substitute “or included in a relevant programme”;
  - (c) in subsection (3), for “broadcast or include in a cable programme”, in each place where those words occur, substitute “or include in a relevant programme”;
  - (d) in subsection (5), for paragraphs (c) and (d) substitute—
    - “(c) in the case of the inclusion of a report in a relevant programme, any body corporate which provides the service in which the programme is included and any person having functions in relation to the programme corresponding to those of an editor of a newspaper,”;
  - (e) in subsection (10), omit the definitions of “broadcast” and “cable programme” and after the definition of “publish” insert—

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

““relevant programme” means a programme included in a programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990).”

(2) In section 71 (reports of domestic proceedings), for subsection (1) substitute—

“(1) In the case of domestic proceedings in a magistrates’ court (other than proceedings under the Adoption Act 1976) it shall not be lawful for a person to whom this subsection applies—

- (a) to print or publish, or cause or procure to be printed or published, in a newspaper or periodical, or
- (b) to include, or cause or procure to be included, in a programme included in a programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990) for reception in Great Britain,

any particulars of the proceedings other than such particulars as are mentioned in subsection (1A) below.

(1A) The particulars referred to in subsection (1) above are—

- (a) the names, addresses and occupations of the parties and witnesses;
- (b) the grounds of the application, and a concise statement of the charges, defences and counter-charges in support of which evidence has been given;
- (c) submissions on any point of law arising in the course of the proceedings and the decision of the court on the submissions;
- (d) the decision of the court, and any observations made by the court in giving it.

(1B) Subsection (1) above applies—

- (a) in relation to paragraph (a) of that subsection, to the proprietor, editor or publisher of the newspaper or periodical, and
- (b) in relation to paragraph (b) of that subsection, to any body corporate which provides the service in which the programme is included and to any person having functions in relation to the programme corresponding to those of an editor of a newspaper.”;

and in subsection (2), for “subsection (1)” substitute “ subsection (1A) ”.

*Indecent Displays (Control) Act 1981 (c. 42)*

30 In section 1(4) (provisions relating to indecent displays disappplied in relation to broadcasting etc.), for paragraph (a) substitute—

- “(a) included by any person in a television broadcasting service or other television programme service (within the meaning of Part I of the Broadcasting Act 1990);”.

*Contempt of Court Act 1981 (c. 49)*

31 (1) In section 2 (limitation of scope of strict liability)—

- (a) in subsection (1), for “broadcast cable programme” substitute “ programme included in a programme service ”; and
- (b) after subsection (4) insert—

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

“(5) In this section “programme service” has the same meaning as in the Broadcasting Act 1990.”

(2) In section 19 (interpretation), omit the definition of “cable programme”.

*Employment (Miscellaneous Provisions) (Northern Ireland) Order 1981 (S.I. 1981/839 (N.I.20))*

32 In Article 11(4) (interpretation), for sub-paragraphs (c) and (d) substitute “or (c) to providing a programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990).”

*Magistrates’ Courts (Northern Ireland) Order 1981 (S.I. 1981/1675 (N.I.26))*

33 (1) In Article 44 (reports of preliminary proceedings)—  
(a) in paragraphs (1) and (2), for “or published”, in each place where those words occur, substitute “, published or included in a relevant programme”; and  
(b) after paragraph (5) insert—

“(6) In this Article “relevant programme” means a programme included in a programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990) for reception in Northern Ireland.”

(2) In Article 90 (reports of domestic proceedings), for paragraph (1) substitute—

“(1) A person to whom this paragraph applies shall not—  
(a) print or publish, or cause or procure to be printed or published, in a newspaper or periodical, or  
(b) include, or cause or procure to be included, in a programme included in a programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990) for reception in Northern Ireland,  
any particulars of any domestic proceedings other than such particulars as are mentioned in paragraph (1A) below.

(1A) The particulars referred to in paragraph (1) above are—  
(a) the names, addresses and occupations of the parties and witnesses;  
(b) the grounds of the application, and a concise statement of the charges, defences and counter-charges in support of which evidence has been given;  
(c) submissions on any point of law arising in the course of the proceedings, and decisions of the court on the submissions; and  
(d) the decisions of the court, and any observations made by the court in giving its decision.

(1B) Paragraph (1) above applies—  
(a) in relation to sub-paragraph (a) of that paragraph, to the proprietor, editor or publisher of the newspaper or periodical, and  
(b) in relation to sub-paragraph (b) of that paragraph, to any body corporate which provides the service in which the programme is included and to any person having functions in relation to the programme corresponding to those of an editor of a newspaper.”

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Insurance Companies Act 1982 (c. 50)*

- 34 In section 72(6) (meaning of “advertisement” for the purposes of insurance advertisements), for “or by inclusion in a cable programme service” substitute “ or by inclusion in any programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990) other than a sound or television broadcasting service ”.

*Representation of the People Act 1983 (c. 2)*

- 35 (1) Part II shall be amended as follows.
- (2) In section 75(1)(i) (election expenses in relation to publications or broadcasts), for the words from “the Independent” onwards substitute “ or by Sianel Pedwar Cymru or in a programme included in any service licensed under Part I or III of the Broadcasting Act 1990; ”.
- (3) In section 92 (broadcasting from outside United Kingdom), for subsection (1) substitute—
- “(1) No person shall, with intent to influence persons to give or refrain from giving their votes at a parliamentary or local government election, include, or aid, abet, counsel or procure the inclusion of, any matter relating to the election in any programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990) provided from a place outside the United Kingdom otherwise than in pursuance of arrangements made with—
- (a) the British Broadcasting Corporation;
  - (b) Sianel Pedwar Cymru; or
  - (c) the holder of any licence granted by the Independent Television Commission or the Radio Authority,
- for the reception and re-transmission of that matter by that body or the holder of that licence.”
- (4) In section 93 (broadcasting during elections)—
- (a) in subsection (1)(a), for “broadcast from a television or other wireless transmitting station in the United Kingdom” substitute—
    - “(a) broadcast by the British Broadcasting Corporation or Sianel Pedwar Cymru; or
    - (b) included in any service licensed under Part I or III of the Broadcasting Act 1990”;
- and
- (b) omit subsection (3).
- (5) Without prejudice to the generality of section 20(2) of the <sup>M59</sup>Interpretation Act 1978, any reference in this paragraph to a provision of the Representation of the <sup>M60</sup>People Act 1983 includes a reference to that provision as applied by any regulations made under paragraph 2 of Schedule 1 to the <sup>M61</sup>European Parliamentary Elections Act 1978.

**Marginal Citations**

**M59** 1978 c. 30.

**M60** 1983 c. 2.

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**M61** 1978 c. 10.

*National Audit Act 1983 (c. 44)*

- 36 In Part II of Schedule 4 (nationalised industries and other public authorities liable to examination by Comptroller and Auditor General), for the entries relating to the Independent Broadcasting Authority and the Welsh Fourth Channel Authority substitute—

“Sianel Pedwar Cymru.”

*Value Added Tax Act 1983 (c. 55)*

**F501** 37 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F501** Sch. 20 para. 37 repealed (1.9.1994) by 1994 c. 23, ss. 100(2), 101(1), Sch. 15

*Telecommunications Act 1984 (c. 12)*

**F502** 38 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F502** Sch. 20 para. 38 repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 19(1) Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

*Video Recordings Act 1984 (c. 39)*

- 39 In section 3(8) (exempted supplies), for paragraphs (a) and (b) substitute “ a programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990) ”.

*Cinemas Act 1985 (c. 13)*

- 40 In section 21(1) (interpretation), in the definition of “film exhibition”, for paragraphs (a) and (b) substitute “ programmes included in a programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990); ”.

*Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 1985 (c. 66)*

- 41 In subsection (5) of section 70 (supplies by utilities), for the words from “services”, where it second occurs, onwards substitute “ local delivery services within the meaning of Part II of the Broadcasting Act 1990 ”.

*Betting, Gaming, Lotteries and Amusements (Northern Ireland) Order 1985 (S.I. 1985/1204 (N.I.11))*

- 42 In Article 130(8) (definition of “advertisement” for the purposes of restrictions on advertisements relating to gaming), after “television,” insert “ or by inclusion in

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

any programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990) other than a sound or television broadcasting service, ”.

*Insolvency Act 1986 (c. 45)*

- 43 In sections 233(5)(d) and 372(5)(c) (supplies of gas, water, electricity and telecommunication services), for the words “services consisting” onwards, in each place where they occur, substitute “ local delivery services within the meaning of Part II of the Broadcasting Act 1990. ”

*Building Societies Act 1986 (c. 53)*

- 44 In section 50(10) (powers to control advertising), in the definition of “advertisement”, for the words from “whether” to “and references” substitute “whether—
- (a) documentary,
  - (b) by way of sound broadcasting or television or by inclusion in any programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990) other than a sound or television broadcasting service, or
  - (c) by any pictorial means not falling within paragraph (a) or (b) above;
- and references ”.

*Financial Services Act 1986 (c. 60)*

- 45 (1) In section 207 (interpretation)—
- (a) in subsection (2), after “television” insert “ or by inclusion in any programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990) other than a sound or television broadcasting service ”; and
  - (b) omit subsection (4).
- (2) In paragraph 25A in Part III of Schedule 1 (advice given in sound, television or cable programmes excluded from activities constituting investment business)—
- (a) in sub-paragraph (1), for the words from “or teletext” onwards substitute “ included, or made for inclusion, in a programme service. ”; and
  - (b) for sub-paragraph (2) substitute—
- “(2) In this paragraph—
- (a) “programme”, in relation to a programme service, includes an advertisement and any other item included in that service; and
  - (b) “programme service” has the same meaning as in the Broadcasting Act 1990.”

*Education and Libraries (Northern Ireland) Order 1986 (S.I. 1986/594 (N.I.3))*

- 46 In Article 2(2) (interpretation), in the definition of “newspaper”, for the words from “cable programme” onwards substitute “ programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990) other than a sound or television broadcasting service; ”.



*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Criminal Justice Act 1987 (c. 38)*

F503 47

**Textual Amendments**

**F503** Sch. 20 para. 47 repealed (4.7.1996 with effect in accordance with ss. 44, 72, Sch. 3 of the amending Act) by 1996 c. 25, s. 80, Sch. 5 para. 12 (with s. 78(1))

*Consumer Protection Act 1987 (c. 43)*

- 48 In section 24 (defences to offence of giving misleading price indication)—
- (a) in subsection (2), for the words from “, film” to “service,” substitute “ or film or in a programme included in a programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990), ”; and
  - (b) in subsection (6), omit the definition of “cable programme service”.

*Consumer Protection (Northern Ireland) Order 1987 (S.I.1987/2049 (N.I.20))*

- 49 In Article 17 (defences to offence of giving misleading price indication)—
- (a) in paragraph (2), for “film or radio or television broadcast or in a programme included in a cable programme service,” substitute “ or film or in a programme included in a programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990), ”; and
  - (b) in paragraph (6), omit the definition of “cable programme service”.

*Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 (c. 48)*

F504 50

**Textual Amendments**

**F504** Sch. 20 para. 50 repealed (1.10.1996) by 1996 c. 55, s. 148, Sch. 11 Pt. I (with s. 43(1)(6)); S.I. 1996/2120, art. 4, Sch. 1

*Control of Misleading Advertisements Regulations 1988 (S.I. 1988/915)*

- 51 (1) In regulation 2(1) (interpretation)—
- (a) omit the definitions of “broadcast advertisement”, “Cable Authority”, “IBA” and “licensable service”;
  - (b) before the definition of “court” insert—  
““the Commission” means the Independent Television Commission”;
  - (c) for the definition of “licensed service” insert—  
““licensed service” means—
    - (a) in relation to a complaint made to the Commission, a service in respect of which the Commission have granted a licence under Part I or II of the Broadcasting Act 1990; and

*Status: Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.*

*Changes to legislation: Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) in relation to a complaint made to the Radio Authority, a service in respect of which the Radio Authority have granted a licence under Part III of that Act;

and “licensed local delivery service” means a service in respect of which the Commission have granted a licence under Part II of that Act;”;

- (d) after the definition of “publication” insert—

““relevant body” means the Commission or the Radio Authority;

“on S4C” has the same meaning as in Part I of the Broadcasting Act 1990;

“the Welsh Authority” has the same meaning as in that Act;”.

- (2) In regulation 4(2) (exceptions to complaints to be considered by Director General of Fair Trading), for “the IBA or the Cable Authority” substitute “the Commission, the Radio Authority or the Welsh Authority”.
- (3) For regulations 8 to 11 substitute—

#### **“COMPLAINTS TO THE COMMISSION AND THE RADIO AUTHORITY**

- 8 (1) Subject to paragraph (2) below, it shall be the duty of a relevant body to consider any complaint made to it that any advertisement included or proposed to be included in a licensed service is misleading, unless the complaint appears to the body to be frivolous or vexatious.
- (2) The Commission shall not consider any complaint about an advertisement included or proposed to be included in a licensed local delivery service by the reception and immediate re-transmission of broadcasts made by the British Broadcasting Corporation.
- (3) A relevant body shall give reasons for its decisions.
- (4) In exercising the powers conferred on it by these Regulations a relevant body shall have regard to all the interests involved and in particular the public interest.

#### **CONTROL BY THE COMMISSION AND THE RADIO AUTHORITY OF MISLEADING ADVERTISEMENTS**

- 9 (1) If, having considered a complaint about an advertisement pursuant to regulation 8(1) above, it considers that the advertisement is misleading, a relevant body may, if it thinks it appropriate to do so, exercise in relation to the advertisement the power conferred on it—
- (a) where the relevant body is the Commission, by section 9(6) of the Broadcasting Act 1990 (power of Commission to give directions about advertisements), or

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

- (b) where the relevant body is the Radio Authority, by section 93(6) of that Act (power of Radio Authority to give directions about advertisements).
- (2) A relevant body may require any person appearing to it to be responsible for an advertisement which the body believes may be misleading to furnish it with evidence as to the accuracy of any factual claim made in the advertisement. In deciding whether or not to make such a requirement the body shall have regard to the legitimate interests of any person who would be the subject of or affected by the requirement.
  - (3) If such evidence is not furnished to it following a requirement made by it under paragraph (2) above or if it considers such evidence inadequate, a relevant body may consider the factual claim inaccurate.

#### COMPLAINTS TO THE WELSH AUTHORITY

- 10 (1) Subject to paragraph (2) below, it shall be the duty of the Welsh Authority to consider any complaint made to them that any advertisement broadcast or proposed to be broadcast on S4C is misleading, unless the complaint appears to the Authority to be frivolous or vexatious.
- (2) The Welsh Authority shall not consider any complaint about an advertisement broadcast or proposed to be broadcast on S4C by the reception and immediate re-transmission of broadcasts made by the British Broadcasting Corporation.
- (3) The Welsh Authority shall give reasons for their decisions.
- (4) In exercising the powers conferred on them by these Regulations the Welsh Authority shall have regard to all the interests involved and in particular the public interest.

#### CONTROL BY THE WELSH AUTHORITY OF MISLEADING ADVERTISEMENTS

- 11 (1) If, having considered a complaint about an advertisement pursuant to regulation 10(1) above, they consider that the advertisement is misleading, the Welsh Authority may, if they think it appropriate to do so, refuse to broadcast the advertisement.
- (2) The Welsh Authority may require any person appearing to them to be responsible for an advertisement which the Authority believe may be misleading to furnish them with evidence as to the accuracy of any factual claim made in the advertisement. In deciding whether or not to make such a requirement the Authority shall have regard to the legitimate interests of any person who would be the subject of or affected by the requirement.
- (3) If such evidence is not furnished to them following a requirement made by them under paragraph (2) above or if they consider such evidence inadequate, the Welsh Authority may consider the factual claim inaccurate.”

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

*Criminal Justice (Serious Fraud) (Northern Ireland) Order 1988 (S.I.1988/1846 (N.I.16))*

52 In Article 10 (restrictions on reporting applications for dismissal and preparatory hearings)—

- (a) in paragraph (1), for “broadcast or include in a cable programme” substitute “include in a relevant programme for reception”;
- (b) in paragraphs (5), (9) and (13), for “, broadcast or included in a cable programme” substitute “or included in a relevant programme”;
- (c) in paragraphs (6) and (8), for “, broadcast or include in a cable programme” substitute “or include in a relevant programme”;
- (d) in paragraph (12), for “broadcast or included in a cable programme” substitute “included in a relevant programme” and for “, broadcast or inclusion in a cable programme” substitute “or inclusion in a relevant programme”;
- (e) in paragraph (13), for sub-paragraphs (c) and (d) substitute—
  - “(c) in the case of the inclusion of a report in a relevant programme, any body corporate which is engaged in providing the service in which the programme is included and any person having functions in relation to the programme corresponding to those of an editor of a newspaper,”; and
- (f) in paragraph (16), omit the definitions of “broadcast” and “cable programme” and after the definition of “publish” insert—

““relevant programme” means a programme included in a programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990).”

*Children Act 1989 (c. 41)*

53 In section 97(5) (privacy for children involved in certain proceedings), for paragraph (a) of the definition of “publish” substitute—

- “(a) include in a programme service (within the meaning of the Broadcasting Act 1990);”.

*Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 (S.I. 1989/2405 (N.I.19))*

F505 54 .....

**Textual Amendments**

**F505** Sch. 20 para. 54 repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 19(1) Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

SCHEDULE 21

Section 203(3).

REPEALS

Chapter	Short title	Extent of repeal
---------	-------------	------------------

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

1933 c. 12.	Children and Young Persons Act 1933.	In section 28(2)(a), the words “a cable programme studio”.
1937 c. 37.	Children and Young Persons (Scotland) Act 1937.	In section 36(2)(a), the words “a cable programme studio”.
1949 c. 54.	Wireless Telegraphy Act 1949.	Section 14(1B)(a).  In section 15, in subsection (1) the words “and named in the warrant”, and in subsection (2) the words “and named in the authorisation”.
1952 c. 66.	Defamation Act 1952.	Section 1.
1955 c. 7.	Wireless Telegraphy (Blind Persons) Act 1955.	The whole Act.
1955 c. 11 (N.I.).	Defamation Act (Northern Ireland) 1955.	Section 1.
1959 c. 66.	Obscene Publications Act 1959.	In section 1, the proviso to subsection (3).
1967 c. 72.	Wireless Telegraphy Act 1967.	Section 3(2).  Section 5(2).
1968 c. 34 (N.I.).	Children and Young Persons Act (Northern Ireland) 1968.	In section 45(2)(a), the words “a cable programme studio”.
1973 c. 41.	Fair Trading Act 1973.	In Schedule 7, in Part I, paragraphs 8 and 9.
1975 c. 24.	House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975.	In Schedule 1, in Part II, the entries relating to the Cable Authority, the Independent Broadcasting Authority and the Welsh Fourth Channel Authority.
1975 c. 25.	Northern Ireland Assembly Disqualification Act 1975.	In Schedule 1, in Part II, the entries relating to the Cable Authority and the Independent Broadcasting Authority.
1975 c. 68.	Industry Act 1975.	Section 9(9A).
1975 c. 70.	Welsh Development Agency Act 1975.	Section 19(9A).
1976 c. 82.	Sexual Offences (Amendment) Act 1976.	In section 4(6), the definitions of “a broadcast” and “cable programme”.

---

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

---

S.I. 1978/460 (N.I.5).	Sexual Offences (Northern Ireland) Order 1978.	In Article 6(6), the definitions of “a broadcast” and “cable programme”.
1980 c. 43.	Magistrates Courts Act 1980.	In section 8(10), the definitions of “broadcast” and “cable programme”.
1980 c. 65.	Local Government, Planning and Land Act 1980.	In Schedule 16, paragraph 16.
1981 c. 49.	Contempt of Court Act 1981.	In section 19, the definition of “cable programme”.
1981 c. 68.	Broadcasting Act 1981.	The whole Act.
1982 c. 39.	Finance Act 1982.	Section 144(3).
1982 c. 45.	Civic Government (Scotland) Act 1982.	In section 51, subsection (6) (a) and, in subsection (8), in the definition of “material” the words from “and” onwards, and the word “showing,”.
1983 c. 2.	Representation of the People Act 1983.	Section 93(3).
1984 c. 12.	Telecommunications Act 1984.	Section 6(1).  Section 49(2).  In section 79(2), the words “or them”.  In Schedule 4, paragraph 81.  In Schedule 5, paragraphs 8(1) and (3) and 30.
1984 c. 46.	Cable and Broadcasting Act 1984.	The whole Act.
1985 c. 9.	Companies Consolidation (Consequential Provisions) Act 1985.	In Schedule 2, the entries relating to the Broadcasting Act 1981.
1986 c. 41.	Finance Act 1986.	Section 111.  Schedule 22.
1986 c. 60.	Financial Services Act 1986.	Section 207(4).
1986 c. 64.	Public Order Act 1986.	In section 22, in subsection (2) the words “broad- casting or cable”, in subsections (4)(b) and (5)(b) the words “broad- cast or”, wherever occur- ring, and subsections (7) and (8).

**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

		Section 23(4).
		In section 29, the definitions of “broadcast” and “cable programme service”.
		In Schedule 2, paragraphs 5 and 6.
1987 c. 10.	Broadcasting Act 1987.	The whole Act.
1987 c. 38.	Criminal Justice Act 1987.	In section 11(15), the definitions of “broadcast” and “cable programme”.
1987 c. 43.	Consumer Protection Act 1987.	In section 24(6), the definition of “cable programme service”.
S.I.1987/463 (N.I.7).	Public Order (Northern Ireland) Order 1987.	In Article 12, in paragraph (2)(a) the words “broad- casting or cable”, in paragraphs (4)(b) and (5) (b) the words “broadcast or”, wherever occurring, and paragraphs (7) and (8).
		Article 13(4).
		In Article 17, the defini- tions of “broadcast” and “cable programme service”.
S.I.1987/2049 (N.I.20).	Consumer Protection (Northern Ireland) Order 1987.	In Article 17(6), the definition of “cable programme service”.
1988 c. 40.	Education Reform Act 1988.	In Schedule 12, paragraph 49.
1988 c. 48.	Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.	In section 73, subsection (2) (a) and the word “or” immediately following it, and subsection (3)(a) and the word “or” immediately following it.
		Section 134(4).
		Section 299(2).
		In Schedule 2, paragraph 19(2)(a) and the word “or” immediately following it.
		In Schedule 7, paragraphs 29 and 30.
S.I.1988/915.	Control of Misleading Advertisements Regulations 1988.	In regulation 2(1), the definitions of “broadcast advertisement”, “Cable

*Status:* Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
*Changes to legislation:* Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

S.I.1988/1846 (N.I.16).	Criminal Justice (Serious Fraud) (Northern Ireland) Order 1988.	Authority”, “IBA” and “licensable service”. In Article 10(16), the definitions of “broadcast” and “cable programme”.
1989 c. 26.	Finance Act 1989.	Section 181. Schedule 16.

SCHEDULE 22

Section 203(4).

TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS AND SAVINGS

*Preservation of appointments of existing members of the Welsh Authority, the BCC and the BSC*

F506<sub>1</sub> .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F506** Sch. 22 paras. 1-3 repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 19(1) Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

*Power to make provision with respect to complaints to the BCC or BSC*

F506<sub>2</sub> .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F506** Sch. 22 paras. 1-3 repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 19(1) Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

*Power to make provision with respect to complaints under the Control of Misleading Advertisements Regulations 1988*

F506<sub>3</sub> .....

**Textual Amendments**  
**F506** Sch. 22 paras. 1-3 repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), Sch. 19(1) Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

*Saving of amendments made by Cable and Broadcasting Act 1984*

4 The amendments made by paragraphs 12,<sup>F507</sup> . . . , 32<sup>F508</sup> ... of Schedule 5 to the<sup>M62</sup>Cable and Broadcasting Act 1984 shall not be affected by the repeals made by



**Status:** Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.  
**Changes to legislation:** Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

this Act but shall continue to have effect, subject to any amendments made by Schedule 20 to this Act.

**Textual Amendments**

- F507** Word in Sch. 22 para. 4 repealed (4.11.1996) by S.I. 1995/755 (N.I. 15), art. 185(2), **Sch. 10** (with Sch. 8 para. 23(4)); S.R. 1996/297, art. 2(2)
- F508** Words in Sch. 22 para. 4 repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

**Marginal Citations**

- M62** 1984 c. 46.

*Transitional modification of amendments made by this Act*

**F509** 5 .....

**Textual Amendments**

- F509** Sch. 22 para. 5 repealed (29.12.2003) by Communications Act 2003 (c. 21), s. 411(2), **Sch. 19(1)** Note 1 (with Sch. 18); S.I. 2003/3142, art. 3(1), Sch. 1 (with art. 11)

- 6 Section 92(1) of the Representation of the People Act 1983 (as amended by this Act), shall have effect as if—
  - (a) the reference to the holder of a licence granted by the Independent Television Commission or the Radio Authority included a reference to the holder of a relevant licence within the meaning of Part III of Schedule 12 to this Act; and
  - (b) there were added at the end “or in pursuance of arrangements made with—
    - (i) the Independent Television Commission or the Radio Authority, or
    - (ii) any programme contractor whose contract continues in force by virtue of Part II or IV of Schedule 11 to the Broadcasting Act 1990,for the matter to be received by that body or contractor and re-transmitted by that body in the provision of any broadcasting service in accordance with the said Schedule 11.”
- 7 Regulation 8(1) and (2) of the Control of Misleading Advertisements Regulations 1988 (as amended by this Act) shall apply to any service provided under a relevant licence within the meaning of Part III of Schedule 12 to this Act as they apply to a service licensed under Part II of this Act.

**Status:**

Point in time view as at 27/02/2004. This version of this Act contains provisions that are prospective.

**Changes to legislation:**

Broadcasting Act 1990 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 14 April 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations.